



## SEVENTH FRAMEWORK PROGRAMME

FP7-ICT-2009-6

BlogForever

Grant agreement no.: 269963

# BlogForever: D4.1 User Requirements and Platform Specifications Report

<b>Revision:</b>	First Version
<b>Dissemination Level:</b>	Public
<b>Author(s):</b>	Hendrik Kalb, Nikolaos Kasioumis, Jaime García Llopis, Senan Postaci, Silvia Arango-Docio, Ilias Trochidis, Vangelis Banos
<b>Due date of deliverable:</b>	31/12/2011
<b>Actual submission date:</b>	Thursday, 22 March 2012
<b>Start date of project:</b>	01 March 2011
<b>Duration:</b>	30 month
<b>Lead beneficiary name:</b>	Technische Universität Berlin

### Abstract:

This report specifies requirements for the BlogForever archive and preservation system. Therefore, requirements descriptions are assembled from several sources like the description of work and former deliverables. Additionally, 26 semi-structured interviews were conducted to identify additional requirements as well as to validate the already described requirements. The report illustrates the method of interview conduction and qualitative analysis. It includes a description of relevant stakeholders and requirement categories.

The identified requirements are specified in a standardised template and modelled with the unified modelling language (UML). Thus, they can be easily explored and utilised by developers. Additional views provide further support for navigation. Overall, the requirements are the foundation for the design phase because they represent the perspective of demand.

The **BlogForever** Consortium consists of:

Aristotle University of Thessaloniki (AUTH)	Greece
European Organization for Nuclear Research (CERN)	Switzerland
University of Glasgow (UG)	UK
The University of Warwick (UW)	UK
University of London (UL)	UK
Technische Universität Berlin (TUB)	Germany
Cyberwatcher	Norway
SRDC Yazilim Arastrirmave Gelistrirmeve Danismanlik Ticaret Limited Sirketi (SRDC)	Turkey
Tero Ltd (Tero)	Greece
Mokono GMBH	Germany
Phaistos SA (Phaistos)	Greece
Altec Software Development S.A. (Altec)	Greece

## Revision History

Version	Description of Change	Author	Date
0.1	Draft of Structure, Proposal for Stakeholders	TUB (M. Trier)	18/05/11
0.1.1	Extension of the Preface chapter, Notes/References to D2.1 included	TUB (H. Kalb)	15/09/11
0.2	Restructuring and extending chapter 1	TUB (Kalb)	06/12/11
0.2.1	Chapter 2 written	TUB (Kalb)	08/12/11
0.2.2	Preface and Chapter 1 reviewed	CERN	08/12/11
0.3	Requirements included	CERN	12/12/11
0.9	Many updates and formatting	CERN & TUB	13/12/11
1.0	Finalizing the first draft	CERN & TUB	16/12/11
1.1	Corrections	CERN & TUB	20/12/11
1.2	Minor revisions	TUB	01/02/12

# Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>6</b>
1.1	Purpose and Scope.....	6
1.2	Overall approach .....	7
1.3	Requirement Categories.....	7
1.4	Use Cases for the Evaluation of the System .....	10
<b>2</b>	<b>Stakeholder of the Archive Software .....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Method to inquire the user requirements .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Requirement Specifications from the interviews.....</b>	<b>17</b>
4.1	Functional Requirements .....	17
4.2	Data Requirements .....	108
4.3	Interoperability Requirements .....	148
4.4	(End-)User Interface Requirements& Usability.....	169
4.5	Performance Requirements.....	225
4.6	Operational Requirements .....	236
4.7	Security Requirements.....	249
4.8	Legal Requirements.....	255
<b>5</b>	<b>Requirement Specifications from the DoW .....</b>	<b>262</b>
5.1	Functional Requirements .....	264
5.2	Data Requirements .....	291
5.3	Interoperability Requirements .....	297
5.4	(End-)User Interface Requirements& Usability.....	305
5.5	Performance Requirements.....	306
5.6	Operational Requirements .....	311
<b>6</b>	<b>Requirement Specifications from the D2.1 .....</b>	<b>316</b>
6.1	Functional Requirements.....	318
6.2	Data Requirements .....	337
6.3	(End-)User Interface Requirements& Usability.....	339
<b>7</b>	<b>Requirement Specifications by Topic.....</b>	<b>357</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Requirement Specifications by Importance.....</b>	<b>364</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Conclusion .....</b>	<b>368</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>369</b>
<b>A.</b>	<b>Appendix A – Interviewer Guides .....</b>	<b>371</b>

## Preface

In this document the software requirements for the BlogForever software platform are assembled, developed and specified. The structure is adapted from the guidelines of the IEEE 830 SRS - Software Requirements Specification Standard (1998) (IEEE Computer Society, 2009).

The requirement specifications in this document are the outcome of Task 4.1 “User requirements and platform specifications” in Work Package 4 (WP4). According to the description of work, the following approach was chosen to obtain the requirements:

1. Identification of potential individual users and user groups (stakeholders).
2. Gathering of views, needs and expectations through questionnaires and semi-structured interviews. Thereby, identification of functional and non-functional requirements, ranging from usability and accessibility to system security and expected performance.
3. Formal composition of the user requirements and platform specifications. Modelling of the requirements using the Unified Modelling Language (UML).

Requirements limit the range of the valid design, but do not specify any particular design. A requirement specifies any externally visible function or attribute of a system. A design describes a particular subcomponent of a system and/or its interfaces with other subcomponents. The requirement specification has to be correct, unambiguous, complete, consistent, ranked for importance and/or stability, verifiable, modifiable, and traceable (IEEE Computer Society, 2009).

If it is necessary to use the phrase “to be determined” (TBD) in the specification then it should be accompanied by a description of the conditions causing the TBD so that the situation can be resolved, and description of what must be done to eliminate the TBD.

Ranking of requirements can be done by the distinction between essential, recommended, and optional requirements. The specification of a requirement is verifiable if there exists some finite cost-effective process to validate that the system meets the requirement (the requirement can be measured).

To identify the requirements, the following instruments were used:

- Review of the project’s description of work (DoW),
- Survey (questionnaires) of blog authors and readers (see BlogForever Deliverable 2.1 Weblogs Survey Report),
- Evaluation of blog technologies (see D 2.1),
- Conceptual work on social network analysis (see D 2.1),
- Literature review of blog life cycles (see D 2.1),
- Interviews with relevant stakeholders,
- Evaluation of written feedback from dissemination activities (e.g. Mokono blog),
- Review of relevant literature, and
- Requirement evaluation by the project partners.

Special emphasis is given on the user requirements section.

# 1 Introduction

The following chapter describes the aim and the process of requirement specification. Relevant concepts are defined to facilitate a common understanding.

## 1.1 Purpose and Scope

The purpose of this document is to specify the requirements that have to be fulfilled by the blog aggregation, preservation, management and dissemination system which will be developed in the BlogForever project. Thereby, the requirements describe functional and qualitative necessities of the system but do not postulate any demands regarding the design of the system.

On one hand, the description of requirements should help the intended users to express their needs. Therefore, the requirements have to be understandable by system users. On the other hand, the specification of requirements facilitates the development of the system by providing measurable demands. It narrows down the number of possible designs. Therefore, the specification has to be understandable by developers and the requirements have to be formulated in a way that allows the assessment of the fulfilment of requirements. The fulfilment of requirements that specify the quality at runtime (e.g. performance) can be evaluated during the use cases described in chapter 1.4.

The requirements specify the software characteristics of the weblog aggregation, preservation, management and dissemination platform. The software will feature the following added-value services<sup>1</sup>:

- Weblog content browsing including advanced searching, sorting and topic clustering,
- Context-based provision of selected subsets of the preserved information, and
- Provision of facilities for knowledge extraction, classification, and data interaction.

The intended weblog aggregation, preservation, management and dissemination system comprises<sup>2</sup>

- An aggregation component (weblog spider) that captures the weblog data from the blogosphere,
- An ingestion and input component to ensure the captured data is correctly transferred from the aggregating component to the storage component,
- A storage component to archive the data efficiently (digital repository),
- A maintenance component to manage the stored content for preservation, and
- A dissemination and output component to provide the access to the data to end and third-party users and services.

Therefore, requirements can address one or more of these components.

---

<sup>1</sup>BlogForever “Description of Work” Part B, p. 12.

<sup>2</sup>BlogForever “Description of Work” Part B, p. 19.

## 1.2 Overall approach

The requirement specifications assembled in this document are the results of the collective effort of various project members. The requirements were developed in Work Package 4 (WP4) using both primary and secondary data as foundation.

26 semi-structured interviews were conducted with interviewees from six stakeholder groups to survey primary data for the identification of user requirements. Afterwards, the qualitative data were analysed and 114 different requirements were specified. Chapter 3 reveals our approach for the interview conduction and the analysis of the qualitative data.

Additionally, secondary data from internal and external sources were reviewed. The project already indicates requirements in the documents of the description of work (DoW) and the survey implementation report (Deliverable 2.1: Survey Implementation Report). The requirements were collected and rewritten to harmonise them with other requirement specifications in this document and to enhance developers' understanding. Furthermore, existing literature was reviewed for further support of the identified requirements.

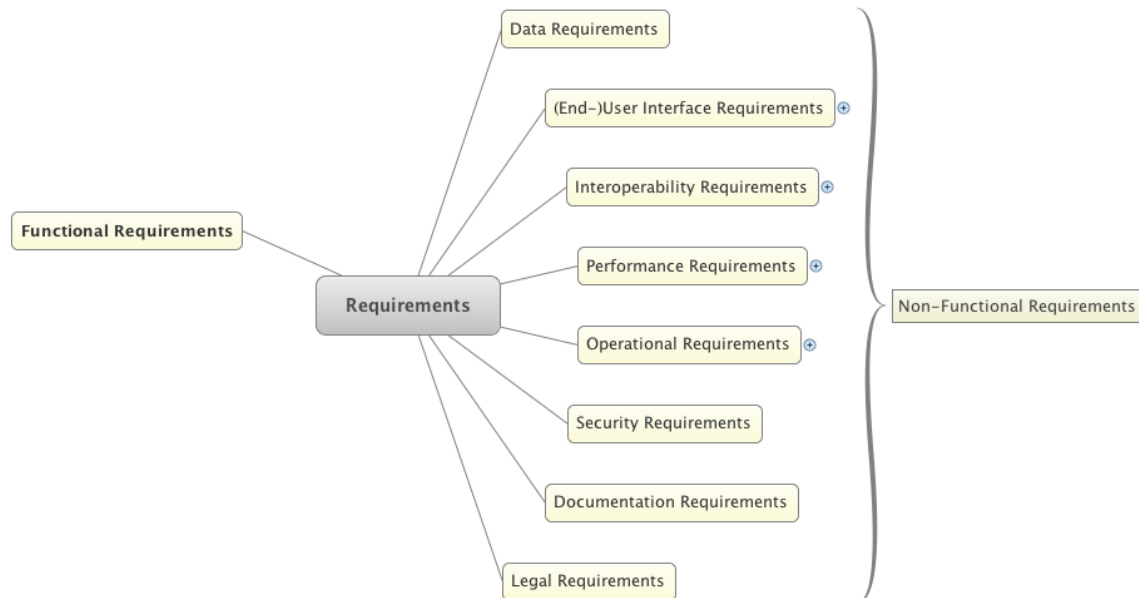
All the identified requirements were described in a homogenous structure. Additionally, requirements were modelled with unified modelling language (UML) when suitable. Thus, the formalisation of requirements was enhanced in order to facilitate design and implementation of the platform.

Last but not least, developers reviewed the requirement specifications to ensure understandability and appropriateness.

## 1.3 Requirement Categories

The requirements are classified into different categories. On the one hand, this facilitates the process of identification because each category can be examined separately and, hence, the cognitive demand is reduced. On the other hand, the multitude of identified requirements can be better explored by the classification.

In the identification process, analysts normally stick to categories and sometimes do not identify requirements besides them. Therefore, it is important that the categories encompass all potential requirements. This problem was addressed by reviewing literature (IEEE Computer Society, 2009; Anon., 2005; The Open Group, 2009; McEwen, 2004) as well as other requirement specifications (Fitzner, 2010) for possible categories. In the following paragraphs, the consolidated categories are described. Thereby, subcategories are also included. Figure 1 gives an overview of the main categories.



**Figure 1: Requirement categories**

**Functional Requirements** “should define the fundamental actions that must take place in the software in accepting and processing the inputs and in processing and generating the outputs” (IEEE Computer Society, 2009, p.16). They can be partitioned into sub-functions or sub-processes if appropriate. The partitioning does not imply decisions for the design of the software. A required software function could be strongly connected to the data that the function should process as well as to the interface that a user or admin of the software needs to use the function. This is especially true if user requirements were development based on user perceptions. Therefore, the restrictions of a classification are attenuated and it is also allowed to sort a requirement into more than one category.

Beside functional requirements, various **non-functional requirements** can exist to define an information system. In the following, they are differentiated into more specific categories to facilitate the requirement identification process by avoiding the ambiguousness of a single non-functional requirement category.

**Data requirements** describe visible data and data the user needs to export or to process. They specify content and semantics but not the format in which the data are processed in the system. Data requirements do not assume nor mandate a specific type of database (Anon., 2005).

**Interoperability requirements** specify the ability of the system to share information and services (The Open Group, 2009). Subcategories can be external interface requirements and standard requirements. The former specifies the external interfaces of the system that are required to enable interoperability with other systems. The latter focuses on standards that the system must support to provide interoperability with other systems.

The **(end-)user interface requirements** specify the interface between the software and the user. This includes software configuration characteristics (e.g. required screen formats, page or window layouts, content of any reports or menus, etc.) as well as aspects that optimize the ease of use of the interface (e.g. specific layout which is familiar to the user). A subcategory for further specialisation of the requirements could be style of the product respectively of the appearance. Another subcategory can be the ease of use or the ease of learning. Style of the product describes



requirements for the appearance of the user interface that are not driven by specific user needs regarding the usability of the system (e.g. requirements based on company guidelines). The latter usability requirements “describe the ease with which the system can be learned or used” (McEwen, 2004).

**Performance requirements** “specify both the static and the dynamic numerical requirements placed on the software or on human interaction with the software as a whole” (IEEE Computer Society, 2009, p.16). Dynamic numerical requirements specify an amount of actions that are done in a certain time period, e.g. amount of web pages that are captured in one hour. Hence, dynamic requirements can be encapsulated in the sub-category of **speed/performance requirements**. Static numerical requirements will be specified mainly under the sub-category of **capacity and scalability requirements**. They define how much or how many the system must be able to process or to store. Examples are how many users can access the system at the same time, how many blogs can be captured, managed and preserved by the system or how much storage capacity must be managed by the system (IEEE Computer Society, 2009). Another subcategory is **reliability and availability requirements**. Thereby, reliability “specifies the factors required to establish the required reliability of the software system at time of delivery” (IEEE Computer Society, 2009, p.18). In other words, it “describes the degree to which the system must work for the users” (McEwen, 2004). Availability requirements “specify the factors required to guarantee a defined availability level for the entire system such as checkpoint, recovery, and restart” (IEEE Computer Society, 2009, p.18). Numerical requirements that belong to a specific function should be specified as part of the function requirement and not as part of the performance requirements category or of the sub-categories.

The **operational requirements** specify required capabilities of the system to ensure a stable operation of the system. These requirements should not be covered in the other requirement categories. The operational requirements can be further differentiated in the sub-categories of standard requirements, support and maintainability requirements, and storage and persistence requirements. **Standard requirements** describe the standards the system has to fulfill to facilitate a stable operation of the system. **Maintainability** “specifies attributes of software that relate to the ease of maintenance of the software itself” (IEEE Computer Society, 2009, p.18). The **storage and persistence** category collects specific requirements for the storage of the data, e.g. to prevent data loss.

**Security requirements** “specify the factors that protect the software from accidental or malicious access, use, modification, destruction, or disclosure” (IEEE Computer Society, 2009, p.20). Examples are the usage of cryptographic techniques, assignation of certain functions to different modules, restriction of the communication between some areas of the program, and checking the data integrity for critical variables.

Next to the requirements that describe or restrict directly the planned archive software, the two additional categories of legal requirements and documentation requirements are more general and contained requirements may probably influence just indirectly the software. Nevertheless, they are not less important for adoption and success of the software. **Legal requirements** cover any constraints through legal regulation, e.g. licenses, laws, patents, etc. and **documentation requirements** relate to the software documentation, e.g. languages that are required (Fitzner, 2010).

## 1.4 Case Studies for the Evaluation of the System

Each requirement description in this document includes a measurement statement to evaluate the requirement fulfilment by the software. However, the assessment of a measurement statement is often only possible for an already deployed system. Thus, six case studies will be implemented in the project that can be used as a test -bed for assessing the requirements fulfilment.

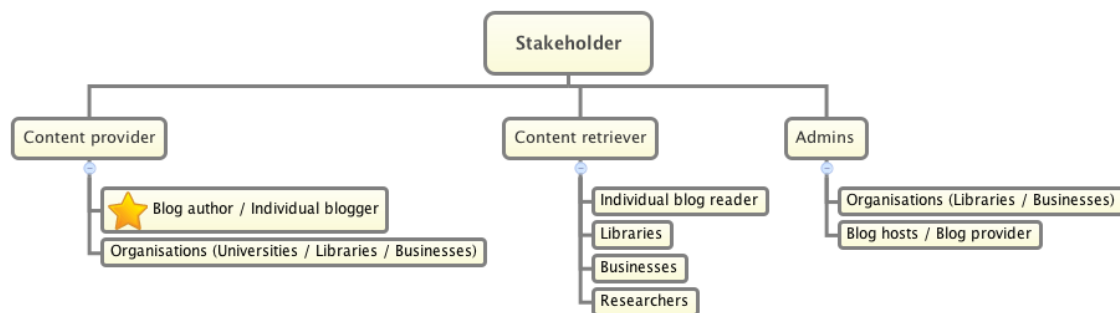
The case studies are implemented sequentially and increase in their complexity. They start with two small domain specific weblog groups in university environments (less than 100 blogs), followed by three general weblog groups from the business project partners (less than 2000 blogs), and end with a wide blogging group with at least 500.000 weblogs. A full description of the case studies can be found in the DoW of the project<sup>3</sup>.

---

<sup>3</sup> BlogForever “Description of Work” Part B, p. 43.

## 2 Stakeholder of the Archive Software

Before requirements are collected, analysed and specified, the main stakeholders have to be defined. Eight stakeholder groups were identified based on the DoW and internal discussions in the project. Interviews were conducted with representatives of each of the stakeholder groups. Special emphasis is given on the group that contributes blog content, especially individual blog authors. Figure 2 gives an overview of the different stakeholders. The stakeholders represent a specific role with regard to the archive and, therefore, the roles are distinctive. Nevertheless, a concrete individual or institution can have several roles, e.g. a person can be researcher, blog author, and blog reader at the same time.



**Figure 2: Stakeholders of the archive software**

As a first step, the stakeholders of the software were distinguished between content provider, content retriever, and administrator.

**Content providers** are people or organisations which maintain one or more blogs and, hence, produce blog content that can or should be preserved in the archive. Content providers are owners of their contents and decide whether they wish to contribute their content to a preservation system or not. Therefore, it is crucial to address their needs. For content providers, it is differentiated between individual blog authors and organisations which can have one or more members who blog for them, e.g. business and corporate blogs.

Survey results in D2.1 indicate a majority of **individual blog authors**. Individual blog authors maintain their own blog. Thereby, maintaining means creation of blog posts, answering comments, designing the layout of the blog, etc. Blog authors may also interpret themselves as individual authors even if they maintain their blog in connection with an organisation. It is essential to know what individual blog authors need and expect. Therefore, special emphasis was put on the examination of how blog authors currently behave and what they think or expect by a blog archive.

**Organisations** can serve as content providers if they maintain their own corporate blogs. Organisations with their own blogs vary from public organisations like libraries and universities to businesses. In order to be considered as content providers, they should all have in common that they are allowed to publish and distribute their blog content, and that they have an interest in its long-term preservation. Their needs have to be considered to support their organisational purposes of preservation and, thus, to increase the probability of contribution.

**Content retrievers** are people or organisations which have an interest in the content stored in a blog archive and, therefore, they like to search, read, export, etc. that content. The purpose of their

interest can vary broadly. They can be divided into individual blog readers, libraries, businesses, and researchers.

**Individual blog readers** are people who already read blogs for various reasons, e.g. family, hobbies, professional. A blog reader may also be interested in a blog archive because he/she could find blogs that he/she has read in the past but which are not available anymore. In the future, a blog reader could also be interested in the blog posts at a specific point in time, e.g. his birthday, a scientific breakthrough date, etc. Additionally, an archive could provide special functionalities that go beyond the single blog, e.g. visualize the network of blogs and recommend similar blogs. Thus, individual blog readers are an important stakeholder group from the perspective of the consumption of archived content.

In contrast, **libraries** operate more as a gatekeeper for individual retrievers. They provide access to various kinds of information sources, e.g. books, journals, movies, etc. Thereby, the access includes value added services like selecting and sorting the sources as well as adding metadata. However, libraries in their role as a gatekeeper often do not keep the content themselves, especially in the case of digital resources. Instead, they manage the references to various sources (e.g. literature databases) and if the user would like to retrieve the concrete resource, the library forwards it to the user or retrieves and delivers the resource. Libraries, in their role as gatekeepers, are very important for the adoption of the blog archive. They may have special needs for integration and access.

**Businesses** also offer value added services based on the available information. But contrary to libraries, they are normally more interested in processing the information to provide a unique selling proposition (USP) to their customers. Such USP could be the detection of trends or sentiments in the business field of the customers. Therefore, they collect or access available information from various sources. A real-time archive of blogs may be an interesting alternative to capturing information themselves. Thus, businesses are a promising stakeholder when business models of blog archives are considered because businesses would possibly pay for special access to archived information. Therefore, the needs and demands of businesses are also considered.

A special group of individual content retrievers is the group of **researchers**. Research on blogs can be conducted for various purposes, e.g. observation of social behaviour, inquiry of historical developments and examination of communication behaviour... However, researchers need “good” data for their research. Depending on whether they do qualitative or quantitative analysis, criteria for “good” data could be the amount of data, how representative they are, or if the author could be identified. The impact of a blog archive will increase enormously for scientific purposes if researchers’ requirements are considered carefully.

Next to the people who contribute to the archive or who utilise the archive, **administrators** are considered as another important stakeholder group for requirement identification. Administrators (admins) maintain installed software and will probably be responsible for a stable and robust operation of the preservation system. Thus, administrators have a different perspective on the requirements of the software and may emphasise more on technical issues, e.g. scalability. Additionally, admins can be more informative with regard to benchmarking data of current usage. Especially **admins of blog hosts** could provide valuable data about the current blogging landscape. Therefore, it is further distinguished between admins of blog hosts and admins of organisations. Thereby, the focus for the latter is on these organisations that would probably run a blog archive. Libraries that preserve digital information and businesses that process social media were identified as relevant organisations.

### 3 Method to inquire the user requirements

This chapter describes how the user requirements based on the interviews were developed.

The DoW describes several requirements from a project planning perspective. Additionally, D2.1 deduces some social network analysis requirements from a conceptual perspective and indicates several additional requirements in the results of the quantitative study. However, it was lacking a systematic examination of user requirements of a blog archiving, preservation, management and dissemination system. Therefore, an explorative qualitative study was conducted with the following steps

1. Stakeholder identification and requirement categorisation,
2. Interview conduction,
3. Qualitative data analysis, and
4. Preparation of the analysis results.

Before the interviews were conducted, it was necessary to describe the field of examination for the study. On one hand, it is necessary to know who are the stakeholders of our archive and, therefore, should be interviewed regarding their needs, demands and anxieties. On the other hand, an overview of requirement categories facilitates the creation of the interview structure as well as the analysis of the qualitative data.

The concept of stakeholder can be used in a narrower or broader sense. Stakeholders in a narrow sense are the individuals or groups that an organisation or system depends on. Stakeholders in a broader sense include every individual or group that could influence or could be influenced by the organisation or system (Freeman & Reed, 1983). For our study, the focus was on a narrow view and, therefore, especially these groups were considered which have power to influence the success of the system, legitimacy with respect to the operation of the system, and possible urgent needs (Mitchel et al., 1997). The stakeholder groups were identified and refined through internal discussions among the project members. The different groups are presented in chapter 2.

The description of requirement categories serves as a foundation for the development of interview questions. Different interviewers conducted the interviews and, therefore, the interviews had to be structured with specific questions to support a harmonisation of the interview results. The requirement categories are described in chapter 1.3.

Each project partner had already some contacts that fit properly to a stakeholder group (e.g. blog provider have access to bloggers, university member know social media researchers, etc.). Therefore, the project partners suggested potential interviewees. The suggestions were reviewed and a set of people was selected to represent the different stakeholder groups. Additionally, the fact that the potential interviewees came mainly from existing contacts increased their willingness to participate and to answer the interview questions. Therefore, each partner was requested to invite and to interview the people that the partner had suggested. Thus, it was possible to conduct 26 prolific interviews. However, this approach implied that the interviewers were often laymen with respect to the conduction of an interview. Hence, an extensive interviewer guide was created to ensure a common interview quality. Additionally, the interviewers were further assisted on an individual level (e.g. problems in the understanding of questions were solved, technical questions for the recording were answered, etc.).

The interviewer guide facilitated the conduction of interviews by several interviewers. The guide was developed in collaboration with an expert of qualitative analysis and contains

1. Pre-test instructions for the interviewers,
2. Interview instructions and assistance,
3. A consent script,
4. The interview schedule with the questions, and
5. An interview debriefing sheet.

The pre-test instructions request the interviewer to check the recording technique for the interview and to test the interview under realistic circumstances. Thus, it should be ensured that each interviewer is familiar with the schedule of the interview and could clarify any problems before the interview. The pre-test instructions can be found in appendix A.1.

Additionally, the interview instructions and assistance provide a step-by-step guidance to conduct the interview as well as additional hints, e.g. how to motivate the interviewee during the interview or how to build follow-up questions to acquire further information based on an interviewee statement. The interview instructions and assistance can be found in appendix A.2.

The consent script contains the text that should be read to the interviewee before the recording. It informs the interviewee about the purpose and effort of the interview, and asks for agreement on recording the interview or at least the agreement on taking notes of the interviewee's answers. The interview could only be conducted if the interviewee gave her/his consent. The consent script can be found in appendix A.3.

The interview schedule consists of questions that have been developed based on the requirement categories and on the identified stakeholders. Therefore, eight different schedules have been developed for the eight stakeholder groups. Each interview schedule starts with questions about the context of the interviewee. The interview schedules can be found in the appendices A.4 - A.11.

The interview debriefing sheet should ensure that on one hand the recordings and notes from the interviews are stored in a consistent way and on the other hand problems and peculiarities are documented. The interview debriefing sheet can be found in appendix A.12.

Overall, 26 interviews were conducted. The interviewees were proposed and invited by several project members. Preferably, the project member, who invited the interviewee, also conducted the interview. The sample of interviews was selected in a way that each of the defined stakeholder groups is represented by at least one interviewee. Table 1 shows the distribution of interviews on the stakeholder groups. The high relevance of blog authors is represented by a higher number of conducted interviews.

**Table 1: Conducted interviews**

Stakeholder group		Number of interviews
Content provider	Blog author	7
	Organisation	3

---

Content retriever	Blog reader	3
	Business	4
	Library	3
	Researcher	2
Admin	Organisation	2
	Blog Host	2

---

After the interviews were completed, each interviewer could decide if he/she would analyse the interviews by herself/himself or if the interviews should be analysed centrally at TUB. Interviews that should be analysed at TUB had to be transcribed and if necessary translated. Interview analyses that were performed by the interviewer could be done on the recordings and notes without transcription. The optional decision about transcription and translation by the project members was necessary due to time and budget restrictions. Overall, the interviews have been analysed by six different persons. The results of the distributed analyses were integrated through a collaborative process of the analysts.

The method for analysing the interviews is based on the grounded theory (Glaser & Strauss, 1967). Hence, requirements were not deduced a priori and tested by the interviews. Instead, the requirements were developed explorative from the interview transcriptions. Thereby, an incremental approach was followed. Requirements developed from the first interview transcription were tested in the second transcription for additional support. Additionally, the first transcription was checked again with newly generated requirements from the second interview. This loop was conducted again for the third and each additional transcription. Thereby, the analysis was facilitated by Atlas.ti<sup>4</sup>, which is a software for qualitative data analysis that.

A template facilitated a consistent way of describing identified requirements. The template can be found in appendix A.13. It consists of

- The categories a requirement belongs to (see chapter 1.3).
- The degree of necessity.
- A full verbal description of the requirement.
- The stakeholder that mentioned the requirement (see chapter 2).
- The justification/foundation for the development of the requirement.
- A measurement statement.
- Requirement authors.

The degree of necessity indicates the priority for the users. It does not automatically lead to a decision about the implementation of the requirement but it should be taken into consideration for the decisions in the design phase. The levels for the degree of necessity are essential,

---

<sup>4</sup><http://www.atlasti.com/de/>

recommended, and optional. **Essential** implies that the software will not be acceptable for the stakeholder unless these requirements are provided in an agreed manner. **Recommended** implies that these are requirements that would enhance the software product, but would not make it unacceptable for the stakeholder if they are absent. **Optional** implies a class of functions that may or may not be worthwhile. This gives the supplier the opportunity to propose something that exceeds the software requirement specification.

For the requirements based on interviews, the justification/foundation consists of representative word-by-word of translated statements from the interviews. This should support the verification of the requirement development, e.g. by third parties.

The measurement statement facilitates the evaluation of the requirement fulfilment. Therefore, the statement has to be measurable value or has to state a method on how the fulfilment will be evaluated. A requirement is presumed as fulfilled if the measurement statement is fulfilled.

The described requirements were additionally modelled as use cases with the unified modelling language (UML). The specification in a formal modelling language facilitates the utilisation of the requirement descriptions in the following project phases (e.g. design) because it reduces the degrees of freedom for the interpretation and it is more familiar for developers. The deduced UML use cases include five main actors. Table 2 gives an overview about the actors, their short names in the UML models, and a full description of the actors.

**Table 2: UML-descriptions - Actors involved in the system**

<b>Actor</b>	<b>Short Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
Blog Content Aggregator	Spider	The component that can aggregate text contents of the blog pages along with the comments, style information or embedded material etc.
Blog Archiving Component	Platform	The archive system where the blog posts, their metadata are kept.
Platform User - Content provider and related services	Content Provider	People who provide content (write in blogs), that should be preserved
Platform User - Content retriever	Content Retriever	The user that retrieves content from the Platform
System Administrator	Administrator	The person that is responsible for management of the whole system

In the following chapter 4, the requirements identified from the interviews are listed. This is followed by the requirements from the DoW in chapter 5, before the requirements identified in D2.1.



## 4 Requirement Specifications from the interviews

In the following chapter, the requirements that were identified from the interview analysis are specified. Thereby, the requirements are organised in subchapters that correspond to the requirement categories presented in chapter 1.3. UML models supplement the requirement descriptions. Requirements were modelled with activity diagrams if appropriate. The use case diagrams on the beginning of each subchapter give an overview on the modelled requirements including the responsible actors.

### 4.1 Functional Requirements

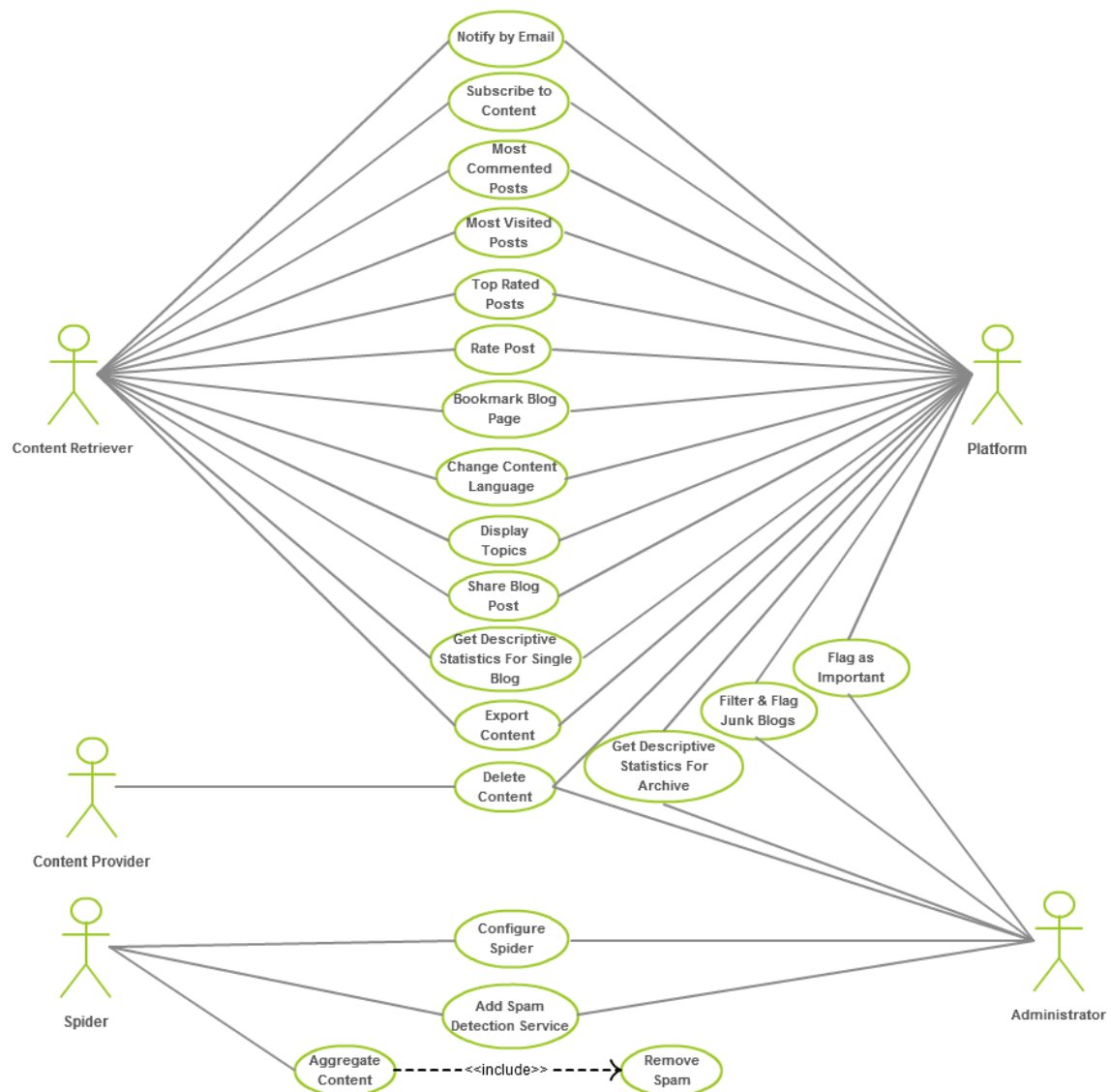


Figure 3: Use Case Diagram 1 for the Functional Requirements



Figure 4: Use Case Diagram 2 for the Functional Requirements

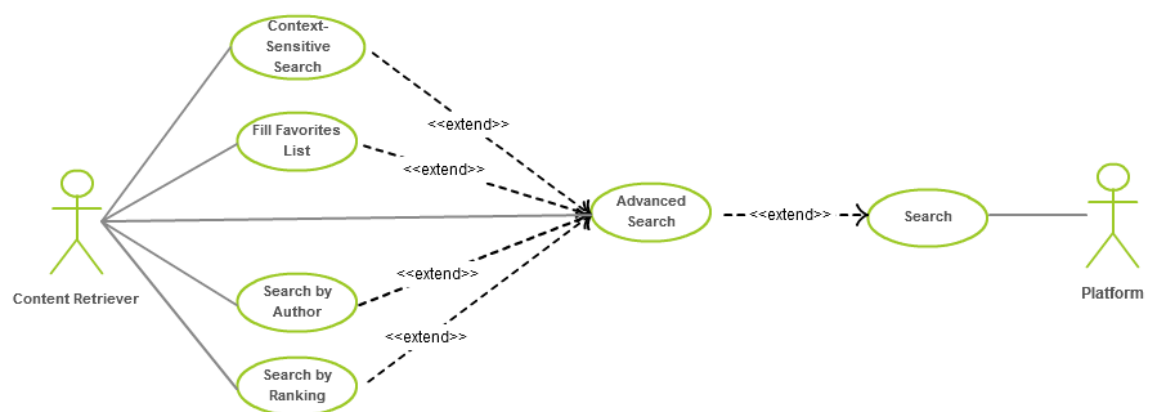


Figure 5: Use Case Diagram 3 for the Functional Requirements

## FR1 – Deletion by the blog author

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The blog author must have the ability to arrange the deletion of a blog post or a whole blog that is archived in the system. The author can only arrange the deletion for own blogs or posts. The post or blog has to be deleted permanently.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Organisation, Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Admin: “we do not have a policy of automatically deleting blogs, unless the owner of a blog asks us to do so or, indeed, does it for themselves”</p> <p>Blog Author: “I would be happy to just have a point of contact to say: “Actually, I would like to take that down.”“</p> <p>Blog Author: Either to contact an admin via email or to exist a menu in a control panel with the option delete of the backup, with the usual prompts, “Do you really want to delete this backup?”</p> <p>Blog Author: “And then, secondly, the function that actually does the removing, whereas that function has a built-in safety check like: “Delete? Delete forever? Really? Are you sure? This will delete it forever!” And then, when I do that, don’t actually delete it, but just change its status to “show to nobody”. Because, I will make a mistake even though it said “are you sure, are you sure”... I will at some point make a mistake. So you shouldn’t actually delete it, you should just make it not viewable, unless the decision to delete has been overturned.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	An author can arrange the permanent deletion of her/his blog or blog posts.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 1.1: Delete Content

<b>Use Case UCFR 1.1</b>		Delete Content
<b>Description</b>		Content Providers are allowed to delete their own content
<b>Actors</b>		Content Provider, Administrator, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Provider owns a blog
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has deleted the content in the archive
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Provider sends a deletion request to the Administrator</li> <li>2. The Administrator views the Content Provider's blog</li> <li>3. The Administrator clicks on a "Delete" button</li> <li>4. The Platform deletes all the content related to the blog</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		1. The Content Provider sends a deletion request to the Administrator
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

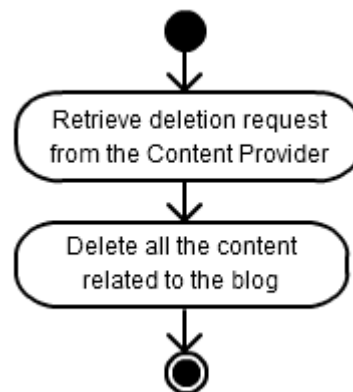


Figure 6: Activity Diagram for deleting a blog

## FR2 – Capturing filter

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	There must be a possibility that the captured content can be filtered. Filtering can be necessary to avoid irrelevant content, and for reasons of disk space and efficiency. The filter depends on the purpose for the respective operator of the archive. Therefore, it cannot be a general filter.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Organisation
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin: “There is filtering on the way in, we don’t do any kind of filtering on the archive itself as such. [...] There are two reasons. One, because we have got archives which are designed for a particular purpose and then you only put things in if they meet that purpose - institutional repository, say. And the other is, for reasons of time, disk space, or efficiency, where we do not want to archive stuff that we do not need to.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A filter can be added that filters the content when it is captured.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 2.1: Add Filter

<b>Use Case UCFR 2.1</b>		Add Filter
<b>Description</b>		Administrators can add filter to be applied on the captured content for disk space and efficiency purposes
<b>Actors</b>		Administrator, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has added filter
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Administrator defines a filter that specifies what kind of information will be filtered on the captured content 2. The Administrator saves the changes
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		1. The Administrator creates a filter
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

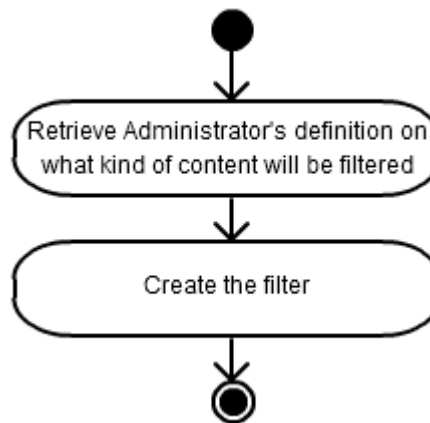


Figure 7: Activity Diagram for adding filter

## Use Case UCFR 2.2: Filter Content

<b>Use Case UCFR 2.2</b>		Filter Content
<b>Description</b>		If filter(s) exists to be applied to captured content, the BlogForever platform filters captured content before archiving
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Spider has captured content
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has filtered the captured content
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform retrieves the captured content from the Spider 2. The Platform applies the filter(s) to the captured content
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Platform retrieves the captured content from the Spider
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

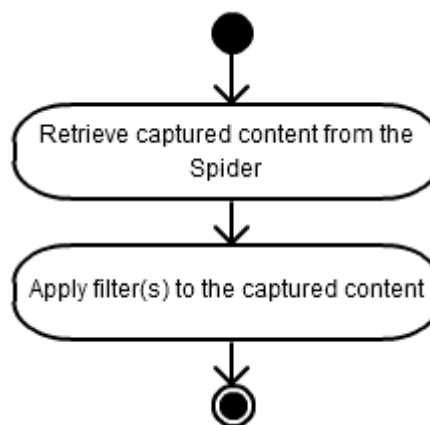


Figure 8: Activity Diagram for filtering captured content

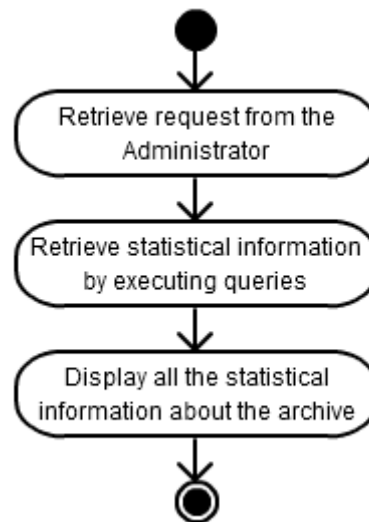
## FR3 – Descriptive statistics for the archive

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	( ) <b>Essential</b> (X) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Descriptive statistics (e.g. amount of blog posts in the archive) should be calculated on demand.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Organisation
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Admin Organisation: “for something like our institutional repository, you might say, well, every now and then, people come and say: how many papers do you hold from physics or how many papers did you put into the archive in the calendar year 2010. And then you want to be able to go and inspect the archive and produce the answers to those kinds of questions.”</p> <p>Admin Organisation: “We would analyse what is in the archive where we either need to be able to provide data to somebody about the content of the archive, because they have a regulatory or other need to know.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Functionality to calculate descriptive statistics is available.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>



## Use Case UCFR 3.1: Get Descriptive Statistics for Archive

<b>Use Case UCFR 3.1</b>		Get Descriptive Statistics For Archive
<b>Description</b>		Administrators can get descriptive statistics about the archive
<b>Actors</b>		Administrator, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator views the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has viewed the descriptive statistics about the archive
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator clicks on “Statistics” button/link/tab</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves statistics by executing queries</li> <li>3. The Platform displays all the statistical information about the archive to the Administrator</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator clicks on a button/link/tab
<b>Variations</b>		



**Figure 9: Activity Diagram for getting descriptive statistics about the archive**

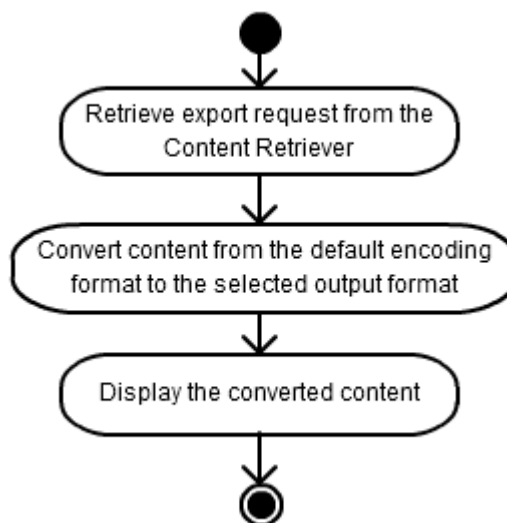
## FR4 – Blog export

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, Interoperability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It should be possible to the export a blog with all its parts. The format of the export should be processable by other applications.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Organisation
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Admin Organisation: “we want to be able to give them the data that represents their blog: the words and images, in such a way that they can take it and instantiate it somewhere else.”</p> <p>Library: It would be good to be able to republish content from the archive in a blog quickly, with the press of a button.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A blog with all its parts can be exported in a processable format.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 4.1: Export Content

<b>Use Case UCFR 4.1</b>		Export Content
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can export blog content in various output formats
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has exported content
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on the name of output format (MARXML, PDF, JPEG, etc.)</li> <li>2. The Platform converts the content from the default encoding format to the selected output format</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the converted content or provides a file to download</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on the name of an output format
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

Note: Same use case used in the requirements gathered from the DOW (UC6.1)



**Figure 10: Activity Diagram for exporting content**

## FR5 – Descriptive statistics for a single blog or blog post

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, Data Requirement, User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>Descriptive statistics should be calculated per archived blog. The data should be stored with the blog.</p> <p>Descriptive statistics contain for example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How many visitors.</li> <li>• Where the people who examine the blog are from.</li> <li>• Which search keywords lead to the blog.</li> <li>• How many comments the blog has.</li> </ul> <p>Google Analytics can be taken as example.</p> <p>The information about a blog may include visitors' fidelity (come back rate): percentage of visitors of a blog post that have also visited other posts of the same blog.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author, Researcher, Content Retriever, Content Provider, Content Retriever Library
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog Author: "I use Google Analytics for that already if I am interested, on which I can do all of those things on. You can check whether someone look at it in the UK or from South-East China. And can check what keywords they used to search it."</p> <p>Interview #2 ~18:20: "Another interesting statistic would be popularity, not only in the sense how many people come, but how many people come back, the fidelity..."</p> <p>Content Provider:</p> <p>The main 2 reasons the Research Institute staff understands the point of blogging are:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Users' views statistics: the team is excited about their users figures going up (someone is actually reading their posts and they have figures to corroborate this via the views statistics)</li> <li>2. Currently the Research Institute links the blog new posts with their Facebook page (they just only started 6 weeks ago). Usage/users figures have gone up as well via this method of disseminating their new blogs posts so staff is excited and keeps adding content to the Research Institute blogs so that has made people at the Research Institute to blog internally.</li> </ol> <p>Would you like to aggregate, manage &amp; analyse all your users' feedback?</p>

---

Please describe an ideal scenario. The answer for this question was:

They use whatever the platform use, it is at the individual blog level but they would like to have that across the board: what sort of posts get the most views, what sort of posts get the most comments...better sense of the kinds of things are working (content users like). Usage is very important for the Research Institute. They have all sorts of performance indicators.

Would you be interested in an analysis of your blog (or part of your blog) to extract for example: statistics (popularity, visits, etc.), keywords, and sentiments and why? The answer was:

Very much, understanding what the Research Institute's users want and then the Research Institute could do more the same, to improve and enhance their blog service and their blog communication strategy.

Very interested in statistics and blog popularity.

What would you describe as a dream application feature for a blog archiving service? The answer was:

Analysis of statistics: easily regenerated stats with visual representation. Blogger is good but extra easy and very visual tools will be ideal. Users' stats from Twitter and FB and the blog. Their entire social media crossed in one place so they could analyse their entirely social media strategy in one place.

Showcasing the best of blogs (interesting and subjective).

Content Provider:

Would you be interested in an analysis of your blog (or part of your blog) to extract for example: statistics (popularity, visits, etc.), keywords, and sentiments and why?

Users Stats are very important and they currently get those stats for the Museum blog within the University museums blog. They can see the footprint but they don't have a huge number of users. It will be interesting for them to know how people find them outside the stats (words they use to find them). People who search will be relevant for museum blogs changing overtime and for the preservation of the blog and the potential museums researchers in the future. Tracking figures are relevant for future research.

What would you describe as a "killer" application feature for a blog archiving service?

Easy to use and that it should provide stats and popularity...

Library: Then, we track the access to the database and receive feedbacks from users. We evaluate all these issues, if we have a positive opinion about the database, then we allow access completely.

---

**Assessment /  
Measures**

Descriptive statistics are displayed for a single blog and blog post.

Fidelity information is displayed with the blog information.

---

---

<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hendrik Kalb</li><li>• Jaime García</li><li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li><li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li><li>• Senan Postaci</li></ul>
---	--

---

## Use Case UCFR 5.1: Get descriptive statistics for single blog

<b>Use Case UCFR 5.1</b>		Get Descriptive Statistics For Single Blog
<b>Description</b>		Content Providers are able to get descriptive statistics for their own blogs
<b>Actors</b>		Content Provider, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Provider views his/her own blog
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Provider has viewed the descriptive statistics about his/her own blog
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Provider clicks on “Statistics” button/link/tab</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves statistics by executing queries</li> <li>3. The Platform displays all the statistical information about the blog to the Content Provider</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		1. The Content Provider clicks on a button/link/tab
<b>Variations</b>		

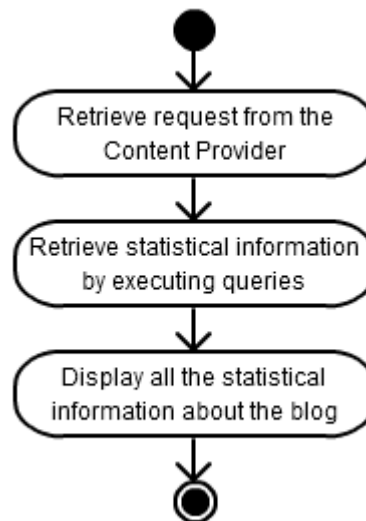


Figure 11: Activity Diagram for getting descriptive statistics about a single blog

## FR6 – Processing of Licenses

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, Data Requirement, User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>(X) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>Licence has to be respected or followed if a blogger indicate a licence for his blog or parts of the blog.</p> <p>It could be e.g.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• That the licence indicate that content has to be excluded from archiving or</li> <li>• That the licence has to be stored and presented with the archived content.</li> </ul> <p>If a blog has procedures to prevent search engines to index them (such as robot.txt) the platform should conserve them and apply them to the archived version as well.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author, Businesses, Content Retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog Author: “I just said that if you had something that needed licensing, I would use a licensing of some sort and you’d hope that you could maintain the citation level should someone want it to cite it in their own work.”</p> <p>Businesses: “basically we conform to the rules of the platforms, when we gather data from platforms, there’s usually some rules, for example how often you are allowed to query data, so that is not exactly perhaps legal restriction but it’s an overall behaviour restriction when you’re operating online and there are restrictions on what you can do with the data so that the copyright stays where it originally was, so that has to be restricted”</p> <p>Businesses: (What legal challenges do you face when you access or integrate external content and provide it to your users?) “We follow robot text.”</p> <p>Interview #1 ~18:00: “IP restriction is one thing we use, although it’s not so great when people change their location and hence their IP, Single, sign-on, robots.txt ...”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	<p>The archive can understand and process (important) licences. Licences have to be stored and displayed with the archived content.</p> <p>A blog that originally restricts search engines from indexing it conserves those restrictions within the platform as well.</p>
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Jaime García</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>





## Use Case UCFR 6.1: Archive Content

<b>Use Case UCFR6.1</b>		Archive Content
<b>Description</b>		The Platform archives the aggregated content from the blog pages
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Platform has retrieved content from the Spider
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has archived the blog content.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If the retrieved content has been archived before the process ends</li> <li>2. Otherwise, the Platform archives the blog content if the blog content and checksum are OK</li> <li>3. The Platform checks if the blog author has indicated a license/data protection for the blog content</li> <li>4. If the blog content has a license, The Platform processes the license and applies to the archived content</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Spider sends the aggregated content to the Platform
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

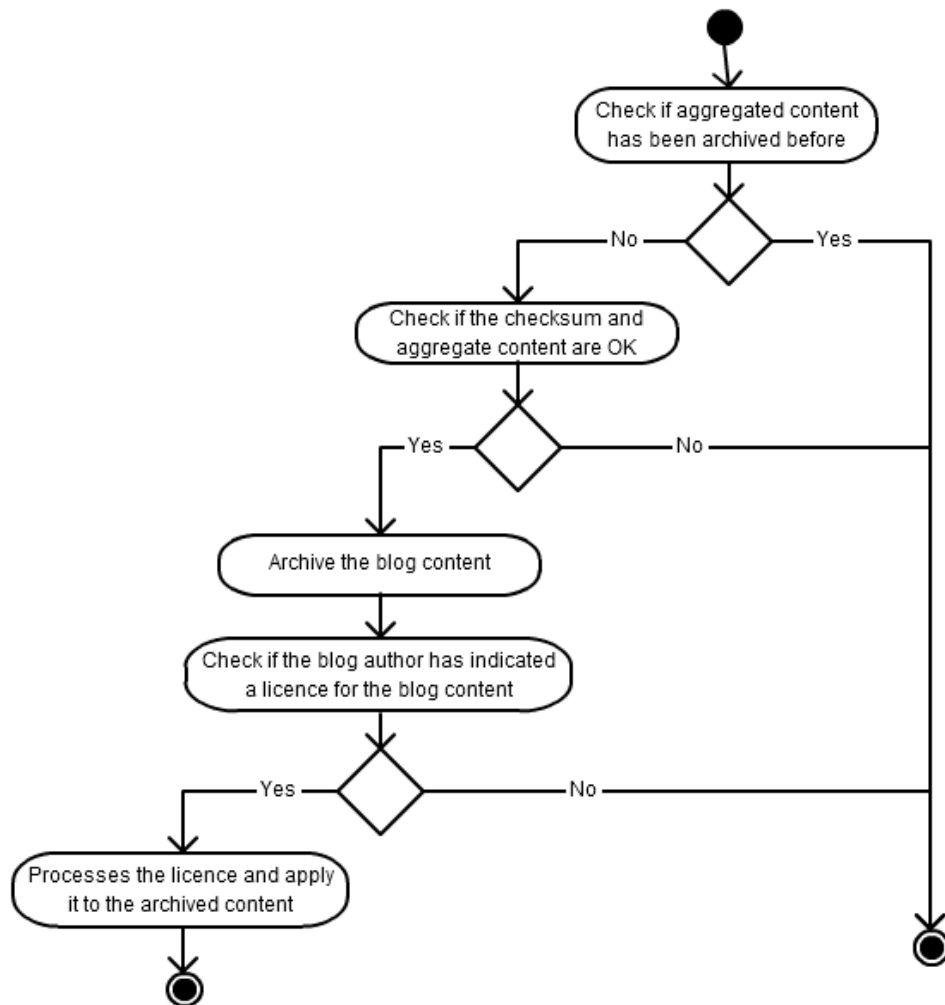


Figure 12: Activity Diagram for archiving blog content

## FR7 – User dissemination channels for blog post

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, User Interface Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>A user (reader) of the archive should have the possibility to disseminate a blog post easily by</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Email resp. Newsletter,</li> <li>• Link.</li> <li>• Twitter</li> <li>• Facebook</li> <li>• Google+</li> </ul>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog author, Businesses, Blog Reader
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog author: “But mostly I use a little lines of communication to highlight that something has appeared or something needs to be revisited. [...] I actually do use posters, and meetings and email and newsletters and forum posts. I use all different channels depending who I am trying to contact.”</p> <p>Blog author: “When I first started, when I posted something in my newsletter like posting links, and when I’d post a link of so and so I would then send an email to so and so and say “I posted a link to your article in my newsletter.”</p> <p>Blog author: “Other than that, I post short Twitter posts to indicate when I have written a longer article.”</p> <p>Blog author: “I’ve been manually posting posts recently in Google+.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Posts can be disseminated (at least) by email, Twitter, and Facebook directly from the presented post (e.g. a button for each dissemination channel).
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 7.1: Share Blog Post

<b>Use Case UCFR 7.1</b>		Share Blog Post
<b>Description</b>		Content Retrievers are able to share blog posts on social networks or send them with emails
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views a blog post
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has shared a blog post
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on an image of a dissemination channel (email, Facebook, Twitter, etc.)</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves necessary information from the Content Retriever (who to send email or any sharing comments for Facebook, Twitter, etc.)</li> <li>3. The Platform sends email or shares the blog post in the social network using their API's</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on an image of the dissemination channel
<b>Variations</b>		

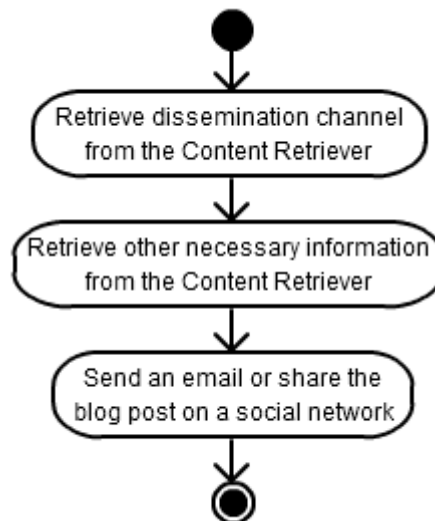


Figure 13: Activity Diagram for dissemination of a blog post

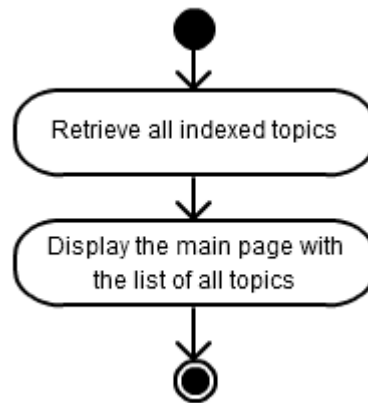
## FR8 – Topics (Categories) for blogs and blog posts

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, Data Requirement, User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>( ) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>(X) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>Blogs and blog posts should be sorted by topics (resp. categories). Therefore, the topic of a blog and of a blog post has to be identified, stored with belonging entity (blog or blog post), and displayed to the user (e.g. navigation of the archived content by topic).</p> <p>The user should be able to select a topic and view records (blog posts, comments, and blogs) associated with it. The user interface should enable easy topic selection and browsing. E.g. search by topic “scientific blogs”.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog author, Researcher, Business, Blog Reader
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog author: “being able to pick up themes would be very high on list”</p> <p>Researcher: “Maybe concerning the subject of the blog or a sort of categorization if it's a hobby-blog or if it's a professional blog and also meta-data concerning the owner, if it's an individual blog or a company-blog or institution-blog.”</p> <p>Business: “Thematic streams”</p> <p>Business: “our customers want to segment blogs [...] and topics such as industries.”</p> <p>Researcher: I would like to see how research/discussions on a topic have progressed during time.</p> <p>Blog Author: The criteria of ranking blogs are according to the topic of each blog.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	<p>The archive can identify topics for a blog and for a blog post. These topics are stored with the content and displayed to the archive user.</p> <p>The indexing of the system will support grouping &amp; filtering. The user interface will expose this functionality to users.</p>
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

### Use Case UCFR 8.1: Display Topics

<b>Use Case UCFR 8.1</b>	Display Topics
<b>Description</b>	The Platform is able to categorize blogs and blog posts into topics and displays them to the users

<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has sent a request to display the Platform's main page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed all the topics in the archive
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform retrieves all the indexed topics 2. The Platform displays the main page with the list of topics
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever displays the Platform's main page
<b>Variations</b>		



**Figure 14: Activity Diagram for displaying topics to the user**

## FR9 – Content translation

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It would be beneficial if content can be automatically translated.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: “Translations between languages would be rather useful.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Content can be translated automatically into several languages.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>



## Use Case UCFR 9.1: Change Content Language

<b>Use Case UCFR 9.1</b>		Change Content Language
<b>Description</b>		Content language can be translated other languages.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The language of the content has been translated into other language
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever chooses a language from a “Translate to” box/list 2. The Platform changes the language of the content by using API’s (Google Translate, etc.) 3. The Platform displays the content in translated language
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever’s selection of the functionality
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

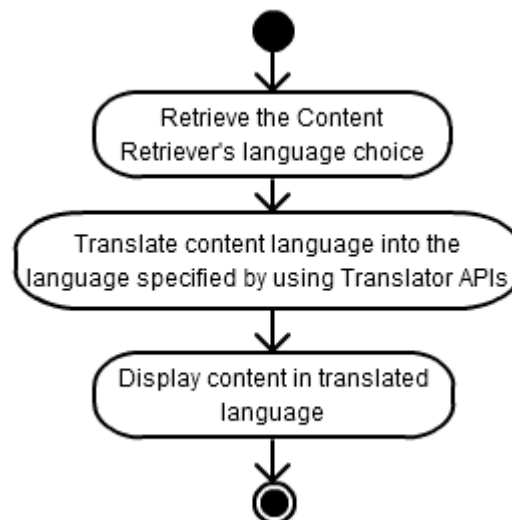


Figure 15: Activity Diagram for changing content language

## FR10 – Bookmarking of blog posts

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive user has the possibility to bookmark a blog post inside the archive or with an external bookmarking service.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Reader
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog Reader: “And, if I don’t have time to read them before, I bookmark them and go back to them later.”</p> <p>Blog Reader: I imagine it like delicious, a list of tags, popular tags, bookmarked items and a search button in order to find what I want.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user of the archive can bookmark a blog post.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 10.1: Bookmark Blog Page

<b>Use Case UCFR 10.1</b>		Bookmark Blog Page
<b>Description</b>		Platform users can bookmark blog pages so that they can read them later.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The blog page has been bookmarked
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever clicks on a “Bookmark” link/button 2. The Platform bookmarks the blog page for the Content Provider
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever clicks on a button/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

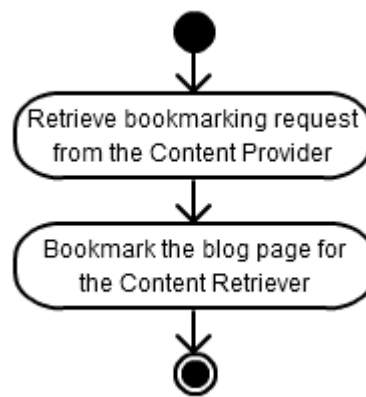


Figure 16: Activity Diagram for bookmarking

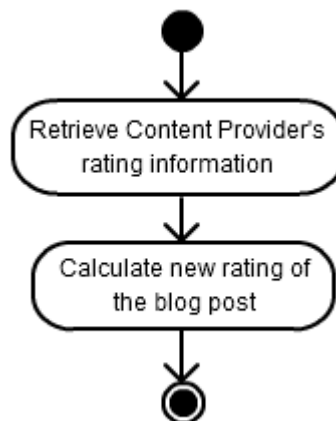
## FR11 – Recommendation system

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	User can assess or recommend blogs, blog posts, and comments. Other user can sort or filter blogs, blog posts, and comments by the recommendations of other users (e.g. of users who they trust).
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Reader, Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog Reader: “But I am almost getting the same sort of effect of Twitter these days, there whoever is putting up a sort of “this is interesting: read” or put a brief reason to why, but even briefer than you would in a headline list because you have less than 200 characters.”</p> <p>Blog Reader: “I know some platforms produce star ratings, where you can actually rate the post on, usually, a five-star rating. Not really taken that as a, to me, a guide. It is subjective, I think, in some ways. You do not know who it is who is doing the rankings.”</p> <p>Blog Author: I would be interested everyone who reads a blog to be able to give a rank for it.</p> <p>Blog Author: It would be interesting ranking to be based not only to the hits but also a user to be able to rank the quality of posts, i.e. the texts, the blog layout, the photos, the videos.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can sort or filter blogs, blog posts, and comments by the assessment or recommendations of other users.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 11.1: Rate Post

<b>Use Case UCFR11.1</b>		Rate Post
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to rate posts
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has rated the post.
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever rates the post. 2. The Platform receives the rating and calculate ratings accordingly.
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever clicks on the symbols (stars, etc.) that represent points from 1 to 5 or 1 to 10
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

Note: Same use case used in the requirements gathered from the survey (UC11.1)



**Figure 17: Activity diagram for post rating**

## Use Case UCFR 11.2: Top Rated Posts

<b>Use Case UCFR11.2</b>		Top Rated Posts
<b>Description</b>		Users can view most rated blog posts.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed top rated posts
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects “Top Rated” option from the ranking methods list through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever clicks on “Search” button</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves top rated blog posts</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the top rated blog posts</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

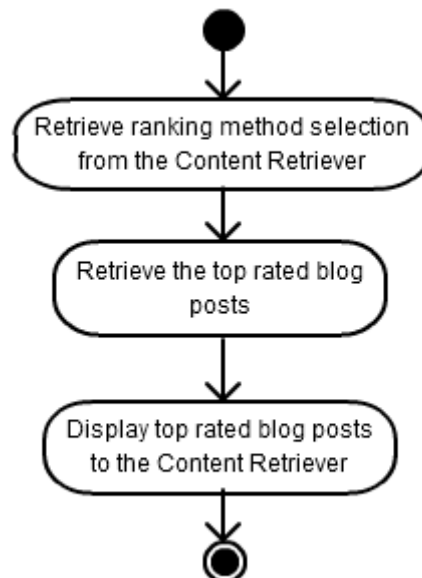


Figure 18: Activity Diagram for getting top rated posts

## Use Case UCFR 11.3: Most Visited Posts

<b>Use Case UCFR11.3</b>		Most Visited Posts
<b>Description</b>		Users can view most visited blog posts.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed most visited posts
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects “Most Visited” option from the ranking methods list through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever clicks on “Search” button</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves most visited blog posts</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the most visited blog posts</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

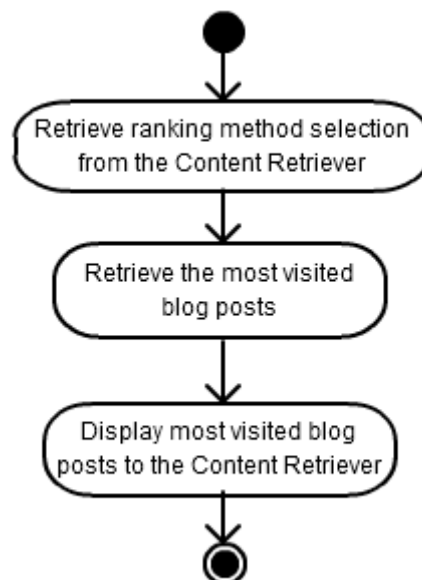


Figure 19: Activity Diagram for getting most visited posts

## Use Case UCFR 11.4: Most Commented Posts

<b>Use Case UCFR11.4</b>		Most Commented Posts
<b>Description</b>		Users can view most commented blog posts.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed most commented posts
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects “Most Commented” option from the ranking methods list through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever clicks on “Search” button</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves most commented blog posts</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the most commented blog posts</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

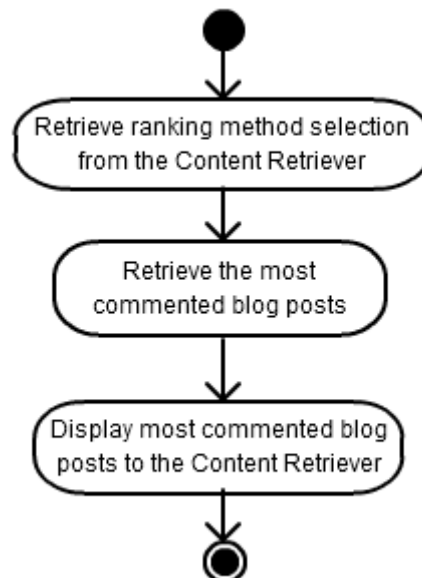


Figure 20: Activity Diagram for getting most commented posts



## FR12 – Notification about changes in the archive

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A user of the archive can subscribe to blogs or topics and gets notified when new content is added to the blog or topic.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Reader, Content Retrievers – Libraries, Blog Authors
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog Reader: (How do you discover new blogs or topics for that list?) “[...] You get notified.”</p> <p>Library: We provide an alerting system that alerts users when a new resource is added to the repository. For example, a person who is interested in a certain topic, he/she is alerted when a new magazine content about that topic is added to the repository.</p> <p>Blog Author/Reader: Like social media, the user can subscribe to communities and to be notified for new posts, e.g. in blog X there is a new post.</p> <p>Blog Author: I want a table with notifications to exist, i.e. blog X has new post.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user of the archive can subscribe to blogs or topics and gets notified when new content is added to the blog or topic.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Senan Postaci</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 12.1: Subscribe to Content

<b>Use Case UCFR 12.1</b>		Subscribe to Content
<b>Description</b>		A user of the archive can subscribe to blogs/topics in the archive to get notified when a new content is added to the blog/topic
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views a blog/topic
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has subscribed to the blog/topic
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever clicks on a “Subscribe” link/button 2. The Platform adds the Content Retriever to the blog’s/topic’s subscription list
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever clicks on a button/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

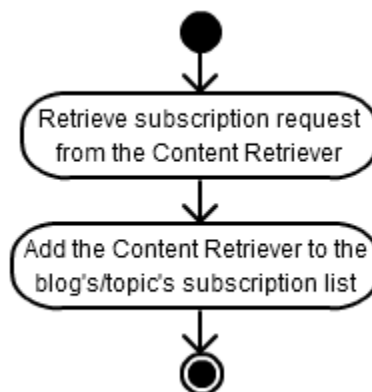


Figure 21: Activity Diagram for subscription to a blog/topic in the archive

## Use Case UCFR 12.2: Notify by Email

<b>Use Case UCFR 12.2</b>		Notify by Email
<b>Description</b>		The user of the archive gets notified when a new content is added to a blog or topic
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. A new content has been added to a blog or topic
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has got notified
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform retrieves the subscription list of the blog/topic 2. The Platform sends email all the user in the list about the new content
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		A new content has been added to the archive
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

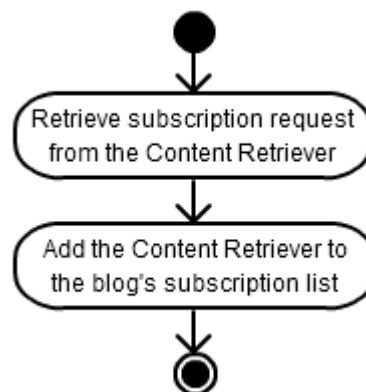


Figure 22: Activity Diagram for notification by email about a new content

## FR13 – Keyword/Metadata search

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirements, User Interface
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>A keyword search allows searching for blogs, blog posts and comments in the archive for specific keywords.</p> <p>The BlogForever platform should index archived content metadata (Title, Creation Date, etc.). The user interface should enable users to search archived data by metadata.</p> <p>When searching in the platform, different elements of blog posts (title, body, comments, etc.) should have different weights. Those weights should be configurable.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retriever Library, Researcher, Content Retriever
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Content Retriever Library: A user who looks in a library system for specific topics, e.g. a political statement of an important person, should find as well related blogs.</p> <p>Researcher: “I used keywords to find lists of science-blogs and I used keywords also to identify blogs belonging to scientists and then I would used keywords like 'research-blog' or 'scientific-blog' or similar”</p> <p>Researcher: “I don't think it's particularly challenging if you realize that there two different levels and that you need both. But I could for instance imagine that you can very quickly forget the blog-level and just go on the post-level. If you search in Google for instance you are searching only on the post-level, that's one of the problems with the Google-search because you are looking for blog-posts and you can't make any difference in where you actually are looking so I might be interested in blogs by mathematicians but there might be also blog-posts about from the area of mathematics written by an IT or computer-scientist which I'm not interested in because he is a computer-scientist and not a mathematician.”</p> <p>Researcher: I use <a href="http://www.mendeley.com/">http://www.mendeley.com/</a> and I like it very much! [...] Metadata are populated automatically, I can search / browse etc.</p> <p>Content Retriever Interview #2 ~20:50: “You could pick a word [search keyword] from anywhere, from the text, from the title...comments would also be interesting to search... with different weights...”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	<p>A keyword search for blogs, blog posts and comments is available.</p> <p>A user can access an advanced search form/page. There, all available metadata types can be used to generate a complex search query and browse the results.</p> <p>When a user performs a search, the sorting of the results takes into account where within the post the search keywords were found.</p>

---

<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hendrik Kalb</li><li>• Vangelis Banos</li><li>• Jaime García</li><li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li></ul>
---	---

---

## Use Case UCFR 13.1: Advanced Search

<b>Use Case UCFR 13.1</b>		Advanced Search
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can construct complex queries and search blog content in the Platform.
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed Advance Search panel
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has displayed search results
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search keywords</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever selects a field from the available fields</li> <li>3. The Platform executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>4. The Platform retrieves the search results</li> <li>5. The Platform groups the search results according to their categories</li> <li>6. The Platform displays the search results in different tabs, one for each category</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR14.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the keywords and presses a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

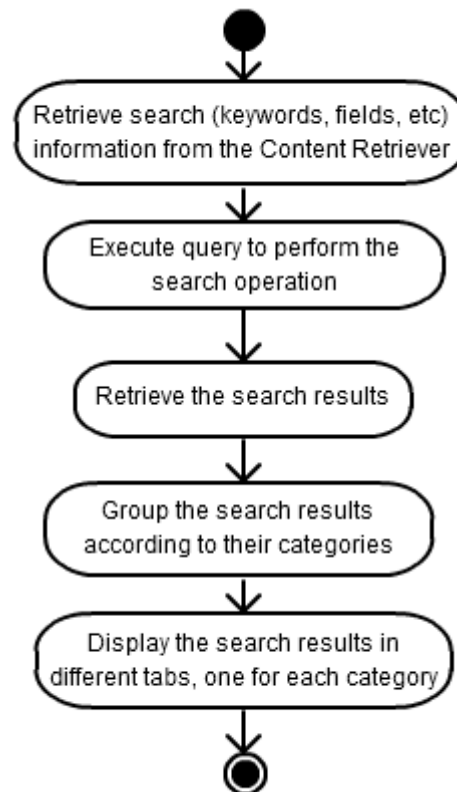


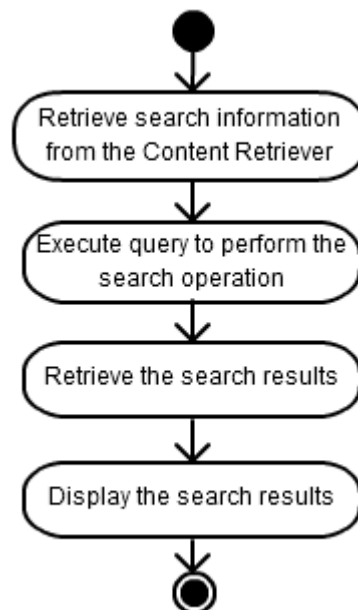
Figure 23: Activity Diagram for advanced searching

## FR14 – Full-text search

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A full-text search allows searching for blogs, blog posts and comments in the archive for specific keywords.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retriever Library, Administrators - Organizations
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Content Retriever Library: A possibility to search the full-text is needed.</p> <p>Admin: We also support full text search in all archived content.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Full-text search is available.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 14.1: Search

<b>Use Case UCFR 14.1</b>		Search
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can search blog content in the Platform.
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform retrieves the search result and displays to the Content Retriever
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search keywords</li> <li>2. The Platform executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves the matching and similar records</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 24: Activity Diagram for searching content**



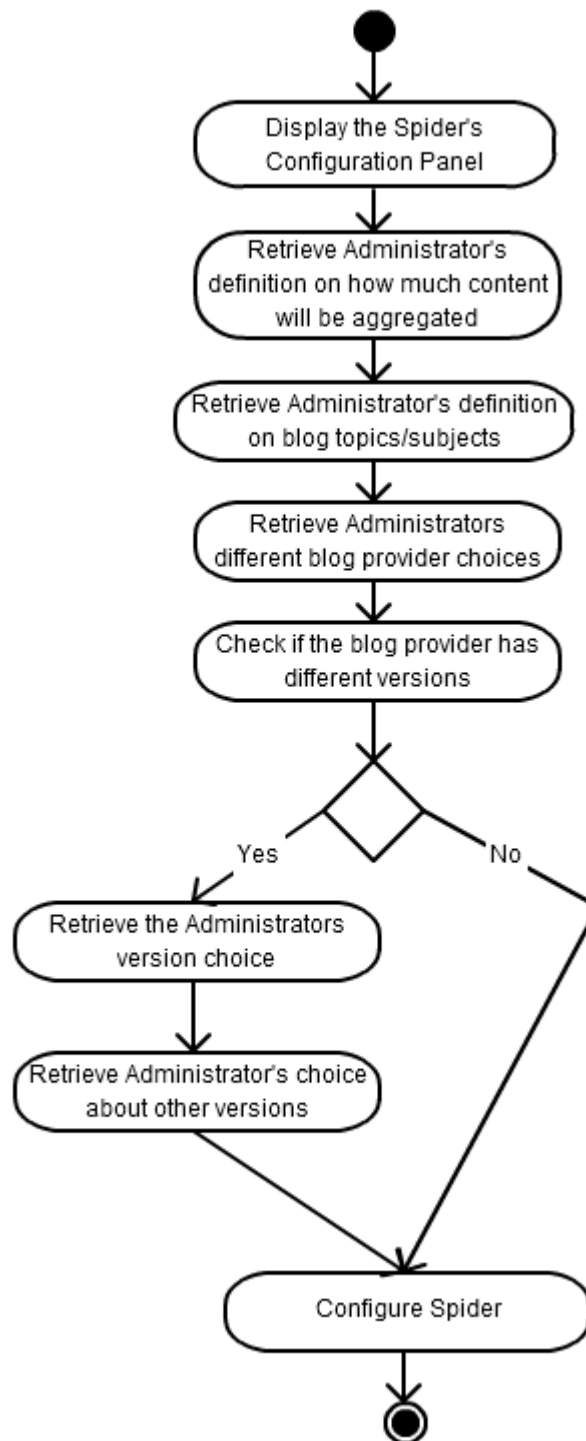
## FR15 – Selection of blogs to archive

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A possibility to select the list of blogs that should to be captured and archived is needed. This list should be adaptable because the addition of blogs could be necessary at a later point in time.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retriever Library, Content Retriever Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Content Retriever Library: I do not want to archive every blog. I have to be able to tell the capturing system which blogs to archive, and how often, etc. Content Retriever Researcher: “I have used manually compiled lists of science-blogs”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The selection of blogs that are captured and archived can be adapted by the archive administration.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 15.1: Configure Spider

<b>Use Case UCFR 15.1</b>		Configure Spider
<b>Description</b>		The Spider can be configured so that it can support multiple platforms and their different versions
<b>Actors</b>		Spider, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Spider has a configuration panel
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Spider enables the modular functionality to process the selected type/version of blog provider
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator views the Spider's Configuration Panel.</li> <li>2. The Administrator defines how many blogs to be aggregated in a certain time</li> <li>3. The Administrator defines how much content will be aggregated (comments, style, embedded material, snapshots etc.)</li> <li>4. The Administer defines topics/subjects for blogs to be aggregated</li> <li>5. The Administrator selects supported blog provider options.</li> <li>6. If selected blog provider has different versions that should be dealt with separately, a version list also displayed.</li> <li>7. The Administrator selects different versions of blog provider platform that the spider will support.</li> <li>8. In case of the Spider does not support the selected version, the Administrator select the "Try similar versions" option.</li> <li>9. The Administrator saves the changes</li> <li>10. The Spider configures itself</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Administrator's selection of the functionality
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

Note: Same use case used in the requirements gathered from the survey (UC2.1)



**Figure 25: Activity Diagram for configuring Spider to filter aggregated content**

## FR16 – Search by author

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, User Interface
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>(X) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>It has to be possible to search for content of a specific person/author. A query for an author should return every blog, blog post, and comment that the author has created.</p> <p>When displaying an author profile, a list of the latest posts by the same author should be displayed as well.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retriever Library, Businesses, Researcher, Content Retriever
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Content Retriever Library: You should receive as well the blog if you search for a specific author in our system.</p> <p>Businesses: “our customers want to segment blogs – e.g. important persons politicians to be separated from teenagers”</p> <p>Researcher: I use <a href="http://www.mendeley.com/">http://www.mendeley.com/</a> and I like it very much! [...]</p> <p>Metadata are populated automatically, I can search / browse etc.</p> <p>Interview #2 ~24:00: “It would be nice to see posts just from one author...”</p> <p>Interview #2 ~29:30: “If you are writing about a specific subject and you know that a different blogger in your group is writing about the same subject from a different aspect, it’d be nice to see them all [all the previous relative posts], it’d be good to find them easily...”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	<p>A search for authors/people returns the blogs, blog posts, and comments that the author has created.</p> <p>A list of latest posts by the same author is showed when displaying a blog post.</p>
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> <li>• Jaime García</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 16.1: Search by Author

<b>Use Case UCFR16.1</b>		Search by Author
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can search blog content by author in the Platform.
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform retrieves the search result and displays to the Content Retriever
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects “author” from the available fields</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever enters the search keywords</li> <li>3. The Platform executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>4. The Platform retrieves matching and similar records</li> <li>5. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR13
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the keywords and presses a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

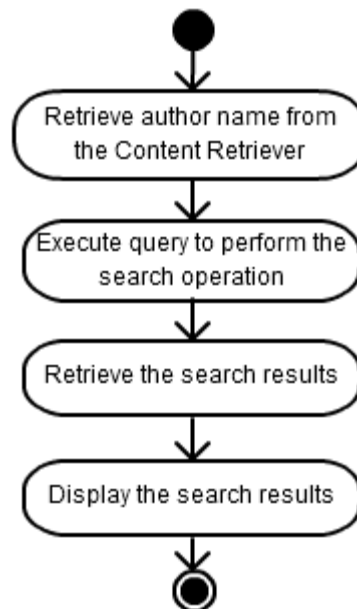


Figure 26: Activity Diagram for searching by author

## FR17 – Print/Export as PDF, JPEG, etc.

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It should be possible to print or to export blogs and blog posts as PDF, JPEG and other formats.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher, Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Researcher: “: Actually through printing the pages as a PDF or photographing them as JPEG. Because I use qualitative analyzing-software Atlas.ti and for this I need document to uploaded into the program so then I would either printed as a PDF or save it as a JPEG”</p> <p>Researcher: “Yes, to begin with every blog - every blog looks differently so whenever you print it to a PDF it will look differently - and also increasing the blogs have widgets, side widgets and sidebars so this can make it very difficult to print - you know it moves the formatting around, so you have two pages of widgets and then finally the text comes - yes that was quite inconvenient. Sometimes printed as a JPEG even though then I lost the possibility to work with full-text but sometimes I was simply unprintable as a PDF.”</p> <p>Blog Author: It would be good an easy tool that would allow you to download your blog as a PDF or txt file or anything else format, that will be printable.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Printing or exporting of blogs and blog posts is possible.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

Note: Use Case UCFR 4.1”Export Content” can apply here

## FR18 – Analyze the network structure of blogs

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive should analyse the connections between the blogs to provide estimations about importance, influence or community structures.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher, Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Researcher: “Blogs are connected into networks through the blog-rolls so if there was a tool which could also compile the connected blogs that would help identifying relevant blogs because connected blogs usually blog about the same subject or in case of science they are professionally connected, so that would have been very helpful.”</p> <p>Blog Author: “You are thinking of tracking the relationships between blogs, I think that is a very useful thing to do.”</p> <p>Blog Author: “X uses an image, Y uses the same image, that creates a link between X and Y even though may have never connected with each other. They may use the same images at the same URL, which is easy to detect, they may use the same image where the copies of the images are located at different URLs, even though it is the same image. One may use the cropped version of the same image of another.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Network measurements for importance, influence and community structure can be calculated.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 18.1: Search by Ranking

<b>Use Case UCFR18.1</b>		Search by Ranking
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can order search results by page ranks
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views the Advanced Search Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform retrieves the search result and displays to the Content Retriever
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search information through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever selects the “Retrieve Pages by Rankings” option</li> <li>3. The Platform calculates the page rankings of the blog pages executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>4. The Platform retrieves the search results which are sorted by their page ranks</li> <li>5. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR13.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the keywords and presses a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

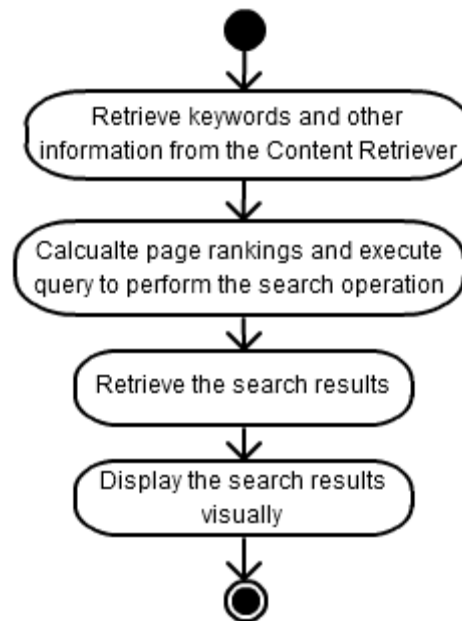


Figure 27: Activity Diagram for page ranking

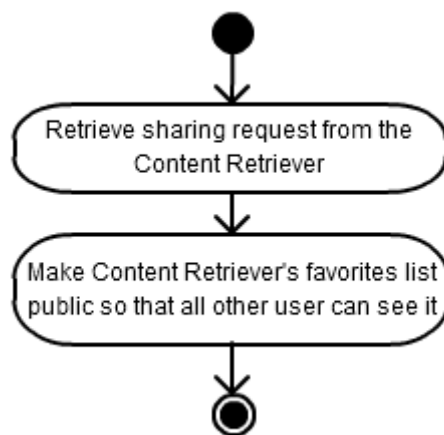


## FR19 – Sharing and collaboration

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Users would possibly like to share their annotations, favourite list or similarities. Additionally, they would possibly like to work together on the archived content (e.g. common annotations).
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher, Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Researcher: “Yes, I think I would be interesting for research because I actually do a lot of research with other scientists so I would be necessary to be able to share (share projects, share codes, searches) but it would be important to be able to decide what I want to share and what I don't want to share - and for private purposes or for informational purposes professionally I read blogs related to say research methods which of course I like to share with my colleagues. So I would also need a space which I can share with others, but which would be still separate from my private space.”</p> <p>Researcher: I use <a href="http://www.mendeley.com/">http://www.mendeley.com/</a> and I like it very much! I can share, download, search PDF documents. I can sync multiple machines with the server and also share with others. Metadata are populated automatically, I can search / browse etc. I can highlight a part of a document and save this as a note. I can share notes with other people in groups.</p> <p>Blog Author: Bloggers to have relationships between them like friend, known or something like that.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Users can share their data with other users and can work together with other users in the archive system.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 19.1: Share Favorites List

<b>Use Case UCFR19.1</b>		Share Favourites List
<b>Description</b>		Users of the platform can share their favorites list with other users
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed his/her favorites list
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has shared his/her favorites list
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever clicks on the “Share” button/link 2. The Platform makes the Content Retriever’s favorites list public so that all other user can see it.
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks a button/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 28: Activity Diagram for sharing favorites list**

## FR20 – List of favorite blogs and topics

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirements, User Interface Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It should be possible that a user can define a list of blogs or topics he/she wants to observe.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Business, Blog Reader, Researcher, Content Retrievers - Libraries
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Business: “Thematic streams of information monitored should be user defined and be capable to vary from user to user and from type of company to type of company. Of course some default scenarios may be offered but they should be subject to customisation.”</p> <p>Researcher: If I could also use a tool to “tag” a set of blogs that interest me and be able to monitor them, I would be very happy to use such an app.</p> <p>Library: It would be good for each user to monitor his/her own set of blogs and also add a new blog to the system.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	<p>Customization of user specific lists of favourite blogs and topics is possible.</p> <p>A user interface component enables users to tag blogs as favourite and be able to monitor their contents.</p>
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 20.1: Fill Favorites List

<b>Use Case UCFR 20.1</b>		Fill Favorites List
<b>Description</b>		The users of the platform can insert searching criteria to automatically fill their favorites list
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views the Advanced Search Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has added all the search results to his/her favorites list
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search keywords and other information</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever marks “Add to Favorites” option</li> <li>3. The Platform executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>4. The Platform retrieves the matching and similar records</li> <li>5. The Platform fills the Content Retriever’s favorites list with the search results</li> <li>6. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR13.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

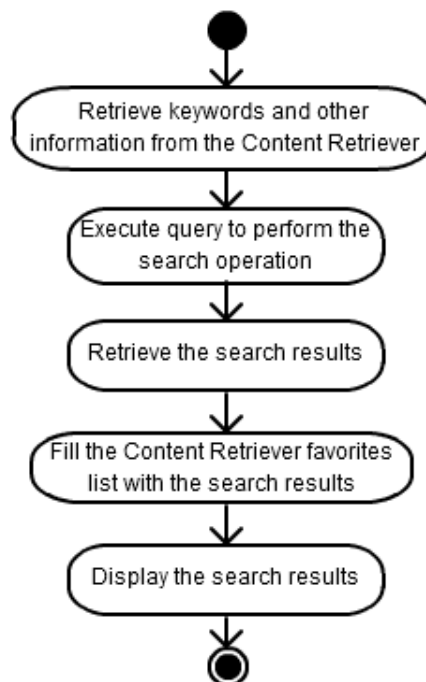
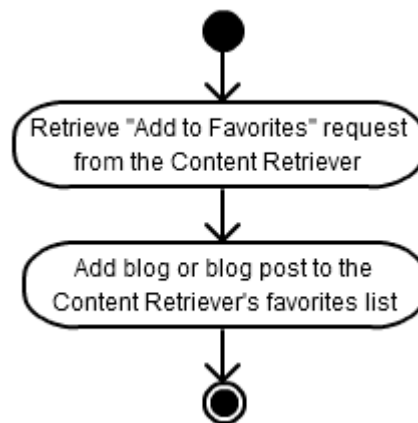


Figure 29: Activity Diagram for filling user’s favorites list by inserting a searching criteria

## Use Case UCFR 20.2: Add to Favorites

<b>Use Case UCFR 20.2</b>		Add to Favorites
<b>Description</b>		The users of the platform can add blogs or blog posts to their personal favorites list so that they can reach them later easily
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed a blog or a blog post
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed a blog or a blog post
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Add to Favorites” button/link 2. The Platform adds blog or blog post to Content Retriever’s favorites list
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 30: Activity Diagram for adding a blog/blog post to the user’s favorites list**

## FR21 – Sentiments analysis on blog post level

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The sentiments analysis of blog posts indicates if the blog has a positive or negative attitude regarding something the post is about.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses, Content Retriever
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Businesses: “also information about weaknesses and spots for criticism for our products and the products and services of the competition”</p> <p>Businesses: “be able to detect the mood of their installed base in terms of people’s attitude over their products, changes in the demographics, etc.”</p> <p>Businesses: “Build a repository of people’s attitudes against products services or other immaterial parts like a company culture, image etc. based solely on information coming from conversations, blog postings etc.”</p> <p>Interview #1 ~11:15: “It’s kind of fun to play with, you can know so much...”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Sentiments of posts can be analysed. The sentiment analysis score for a blog post is displayed to the end user.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Jaime García</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 21.1: Analyze Sentiments

<b>Use Case UCFR 21.1</b>		Analyze Sentiments
<b>Description</b>		The Platform can analyze sentiments and calculate a score for a blog post which is displayed to the end user.
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has provided a sentiment on a blog post
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has calculated a score for the blog post
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform analysis the sentiment and determines score for it 2. The Platform calculates the overall score for the blog post 3. The Platform updates the score for the blog post
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever has provided a comment
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

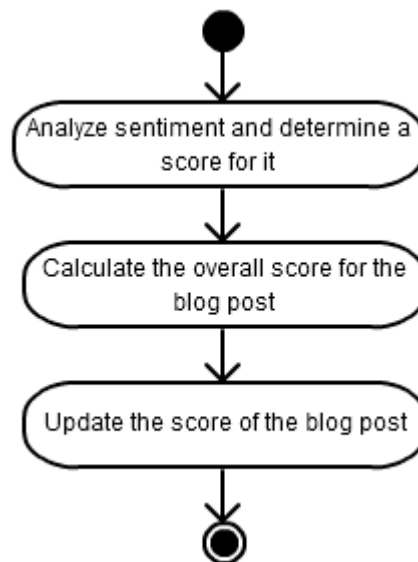


Figure 31: Activity Diagram for sentiment analysis of a blog post

## FR22 – Summaries/Journals about new archive content

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	( ) <b>Essential</b> (X) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A user can subscribe a newsletter or electronic journal that provides a summarization of interesting new blog posts on a regular basis (e.g. once a week).
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses, Blog Reader/Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Businesses: “we provide automatic e-mails that are either summaries or either reports from the dashboard”</p> <p>Blog Reader/Author: In order to be notified for updates I would prefer the classic way of email or a Facebook like mechanism, that gathers the new elements and when you log in the service and you are going to use it, it shows you what have happened in the past, what interests you, but there are also 10 new stories and if you want to see and read them click here, so I can choose to see the recent content if I have time or to read it later.</p> <p>Blog Author: “So, to make any sort of system like this useful to users, it is going to have to provide that prompt that will send users to whatever information is that you want to receive on a regular basis.”</p> <p>Blog Author: “We have 260 separate blogs that people write. And it is essential for us to have a central newsletter that we send out to every participant every weekday, so when somebody has posted a new post at one of those 260 blogs it shows up in the newsletter. Because it is impossible for somebody to go to those 260 blogs and even they are not going to come to our course website to see what’s there.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can subscribe a summary document that will be sent on a regular basis (e.g. once a week) and informs about new posts that could be interesting to the user.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

Note: Use cases UCFR 12.1 and 12.2 can apply here



## FR23 – Detection of duplicates

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Duplicates of blog posts should be detected.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses, Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Businesses: (Can you identify any problems or issues with the procedures you are currently following?) “[...] finding duplicates [...]”</p> <p>Blog Author: “I think you will have an issue with duplicates, but, I mean, I do not want to be the one editing duplicates.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Duplicates can be detected automatically.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: Use case UCFR 6.1 can apply here

## FR24 – User specific collections/projects

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A person who uses the archive for several different reasons, e.g. private vs. professional or in different projects, would benefit from a possibility to manage preferences (e.g. lists of favourite blogs) and data (e.g. annotations) in different projects or areas.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Researcher: “For scientific purposes it would be important that the data can be sorted into different projects”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can manage different projects or areas under one user account.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 24.1: Create Project

<b>Use Case UCFR 24.1</b>		Create Project
<b>Description</b>		Users of the platform can manage different projects where they can categorize blogs for different purposes under one user account.
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has created a project
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Create Project” button/link</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever enters project information (name, description, etc.)</li> <li>3. The Platform creates a project for the Content Provider</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

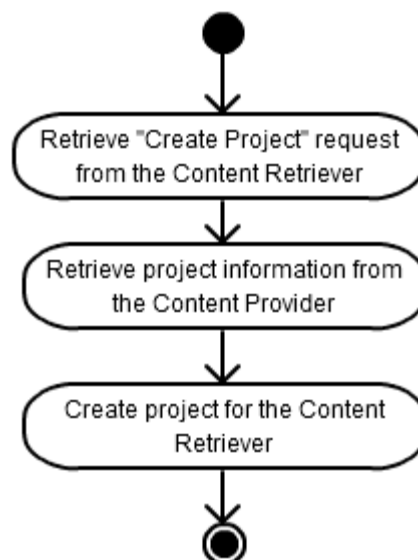


Figure 32: Activity Diagram for creating a project

## Use Case UCFR 24.2: Add to Project

<b>Use Case UCFR 24.1</b>		Add to Project
<b>Description</b>		Users of the platform can add blogs to their projects
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed a blog
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has created a project
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Add to Project” button/link</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves and displays the Content Retriever’s project list</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever selects a project from the list</li> <li>4. The Platform adds the blog content to the selected project</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

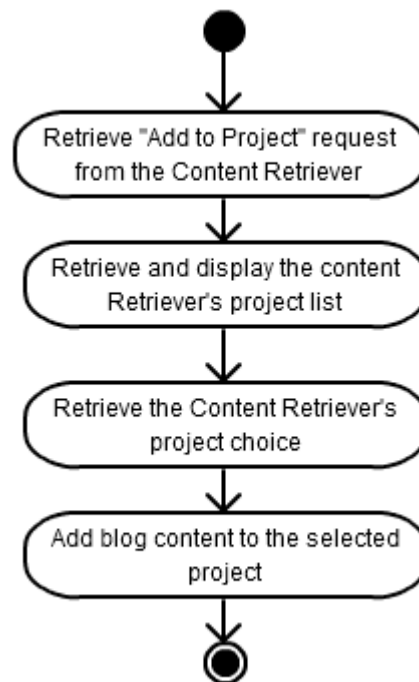
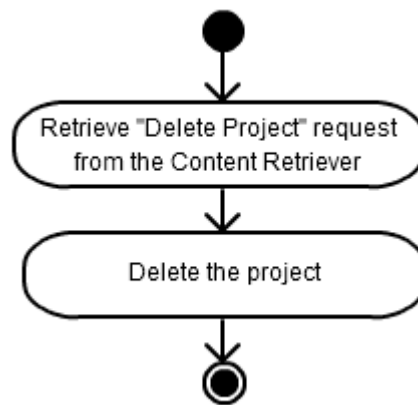


Figure 33: Activity Diagram for adding blog content to a project

## Use Case UCFR 24.3: Delete Project

<b>Use Case UCFR 24.3</b>		Delete Project
<b>Description</b>		Users of the platform can delete their project if they do not want to use them anymore
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed a project
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has deleted his/her project
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Delete Project” button/link 2. The Platform deletes the project
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 34: Activity Diagram for deleting a project**

## Use Case UCFR 24.4: Delete from Project

<b>Use Case UCFR 24.4</b>		Delete from Project
<b>Description</b>		Users of the platform can delete blogs from their projects
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed a project
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has deleted his/her project
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever selects blogs from the project 2. The Content Retriever clicks on a “Delete” button 3. The Platform removes the selected blogs from the project
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

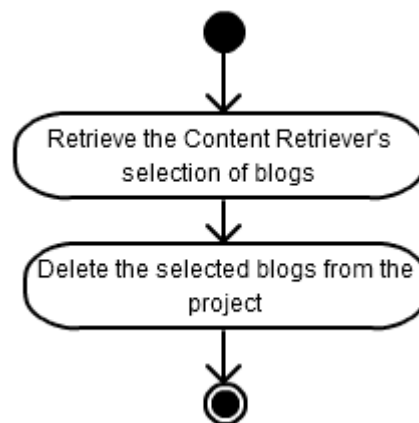


Figure 35: Activity Diagram for deleting a blog from a project

## FR25 – Paid access/Billing system

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Businesses models can be based on the different access (e.g. basic and premium) to the archived content or functionalities of the archive. Therefore, a functionality to restrict access to paying users and a billing system inside the archive would be beneficial for such business models.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Businesses: “We would be happy to work with some other members of a value chain for the joint offer of a paid service”</p> <p>Businesses: “Access should be given for free - or at least to the customers that are having a contract.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Functionalities are available that can restrict the access on content and/or services to paying users.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 25.1: Upgrade Account

<b>Use Case UCFR25.1</b>		Upgrade Account
<b>Description</b>		The users of the BlogForever platform can upgrade their accounts to get additional services.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views the “Pricing” interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever’s account has been upgraded and Content Retriever can use additional services.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters necessary information (paying method such as credit card or PayPal and etc....) to upgrade his/her account</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves the information and processes it.</li> <li>3. If the retrieved information is correct (valid credit number / PayPal account etc....) the Platform sets an upgraded account policy for the Content Retriever</li> <li>4. Otherwise, The Platform displays an error message</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters necessary information and clicks a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

Note: Same use case used in the requirements gathered from the DOW (UC12.1)

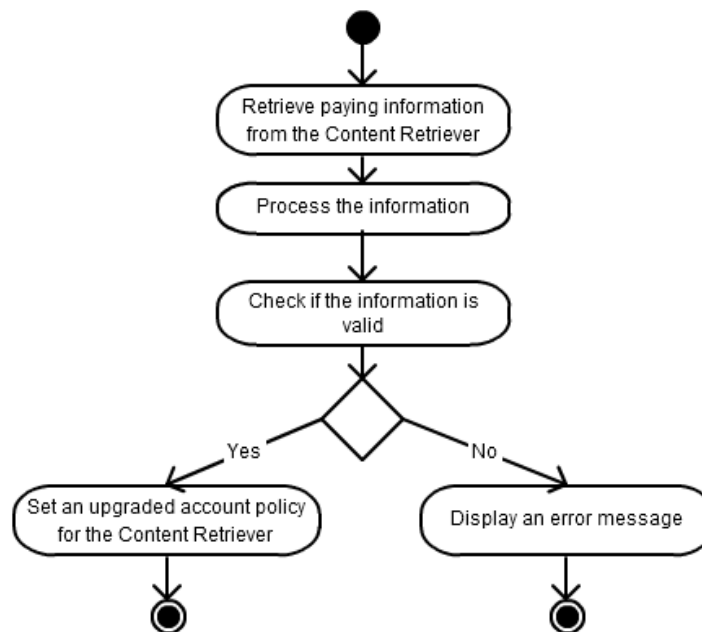


Figure 36: Activity Diagram for upgrading user accounts



## FR26 – Context-sensitive search by keyword

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The end-user is able to search using context-specific keywords, i.e. keywords are interpreted under a specific topic or context, or field.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interview#2 ~10:45</p> <p>“We were doing a search on LHC (CERN) on social media, but LHC also stands for the name of a hair loss product, and disappointed customers were complaining against this product that doesn’t work... You need to have a search engine that is quite smart...”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Keywords contain semantic information and search results can be categorized based on that information.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 26.1: Context-Sensitive Search

<b>Use Case UCFR 26.1</b>		Context-Sensitive Search
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can search blog content in the Platform.
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed Advance Search panel
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has displayed search results
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search keywords</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever selects a field from the available fields</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever selects a topic from the available “topics” list</li> <li>4. The Platform performs a search among the blogs having the selected “topic”</li> <li>5. The Platform retrieves the matching records</li> <li>6. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR13.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the keywords and presses a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

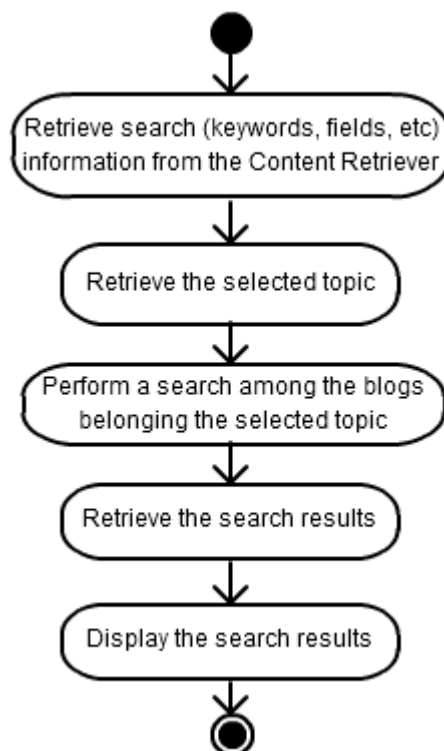


Figure 37: Activity Diagram for context-sensitive search

## FR27 – Ranking of blogs and blog posts

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>The ranking criteria for blogs may include popularity, comments sentiment analysis, geographic al location, frequency of update and language.</p> <p>Ranking of blogs should be based on frequency of new posts and validity of content. Also ranking in a category should be done according to the number of links, posts, comments they have, and the user to know which these criteria are.</p> <p>More ranking criteria: how much other speak about it, how frequently it is updated, amount of content, how frequently the Facebook page is updated and with what content, if there are answers in the comments from the owners of the blog, if there is twitter activity.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, Blog Author/Reader
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interview#2 ~15:05</p> <p>“The sentiment, that to me is very important...it’s respected, it’s interesting”</p> <p>Interview#1 ~10:05</p> <p>“I think frequency of updates is pretty good. Probably the language in which people blog. Maybe location.”</p> <p>Blog Author/Reader:</p> <p>The criteria that might be the same for all blogs, independent of their type, are that they should be updated frequently and the user to check if the published content is valid. In case that the information is invalid the blogger loses his reliability.</p> <p>Ranking have meaning among the blogs of a specific topic, e.g. if top-5 blogs includes 5 technology blogs and 5 others but if I am interested to flowers ranking has no sense. If I get into category floriculture and see a ranked list of blogs based on a specific ranking, these can be the number of links, posts or comments they have, this can make sense if I know which are these criteria, in order to know how relevant this is to me.</p> <p>I can think various criteria, e.g. how much other speak about it, how frequently it is updated, what amount of content it has, how many comments it has, how frequently the Facebook page is updated and with what content, if there are answers in the comments from the owners of the blog, if there is twitter activity, a combination of</p>

---

	things that shows that someone runs and cares about this blog and not something in the internet that generates content.
	Blog Reader: I want to see a list with the top-5 or top-N blogs and to have information about the category they belong to.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The platform provides different ranking algorithms based on the mentioned criteria.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Jaime García</li><li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li><li>• Stella Kopidaki</li></ul>

---

Note: Use Case UCFR 11.2, 11.3 and 11.4 can apply here

## Use Case UCFR 27.1: Most Updated Posts

<b>Use Case UCFR27.1</b>		Most Updated Posts
<b>Description</b>		Users can view most updated blog posts.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed most updated blog posts
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects “Most Updated” option from the ranking methods list through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever clicks on “Search” button</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves most updated blog posts</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the most updated blog posts</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

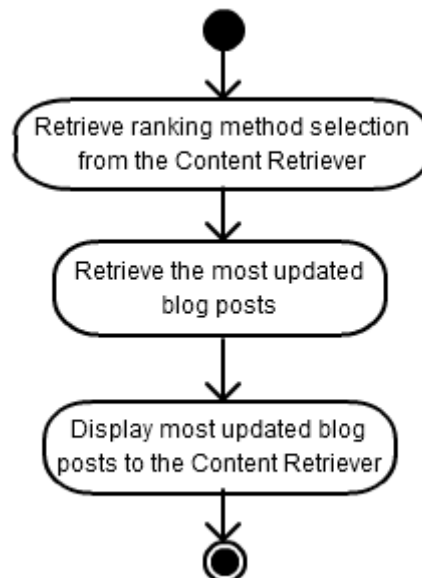


Figure 38: Activity Diagram for getting most updated blog posts

## Use Case UCFR 27.2: Most Shared Posts

<b>Use Case UCFR27.2</b>		Most Shared Posts
<b>Description</b>		Users can view blog posts that are most shared on Facebook
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed most shared blog posts
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects “Most Shared on Facebook” option from the ranking methods list through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever clicks on “Search” button</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves most shared blog posts</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the most shared blog posts</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

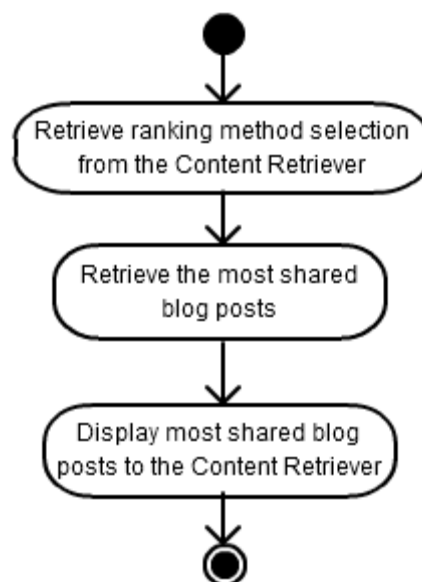


Figure 39: Activity Diagram for getting most shared blog posts on Facebook

## Use Case UCFR 27.3: Most Tweeted Posts

<b>Use Case UCFR27.3</b>		Most Tweeted Posts
<b>Description</b>		Users can view blog posts that are most tweeted on Twitter
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed most shared blog posts
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects “Most Tweeted” option from the ranking methods list through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever clicks on “Search” button</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves most tweeted blog posts</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the most tweeted blog posts</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

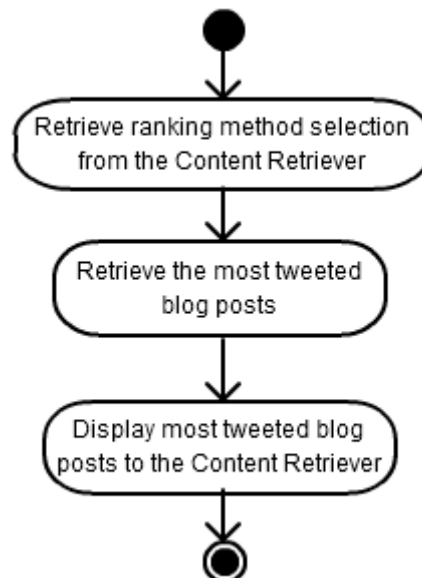


Figure 40: Activity Diagram for getting most shared blog posts on Twitter

## FR28 – Recommend a cluster of blogs according to user preferences

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Having a list of blogs that the user is interested in, clusters to be constructed based on the topic in order to suggest to the user blogs that he might be interested in.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers - Blog Readers.
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Phrases from the interview</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I would like to start with a list of blogs that the system has recognized that I am interested in, and I have initially denote that I am interested in, e.g. I have a list with 2 technological blogs, 2 blogs of photography, 2 music blogs, 1 blog x, over it I want to be able to build and to add or delete items instead of searching what I like. Since there are tools that someone can understand the fields I like, looking at my Facebook likes, twitter tweets, what I read in Google reader, so with this data I want the service to automatically create a cluster, to suggest it to me and ask my participation by asking if I am happy with this cluster or if I want to add or delete some items and with this way to build the cluster. The cluster can get smaller or bigger with suggestions and related items.</li> </ul>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A cluster of blogs is recommended based on the preferences of the user.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>



## Use Case UCFR 28.1: Suggest Blogs

<b>Use Case UCFR28.1</b>		Suggest Blogs
<b>Description</b>		A cluster of blogs is recommended based on the preferences of the user.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has suggested a cluster of blogs to the Content Retriever
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform analyses a list of blogs that the Content Retriever had interested in</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves a list/cluster of blogs that fits to the Content Retrievers interest</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the suggested list/cluster of blogs</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever logs in to the BlogForever Platform
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

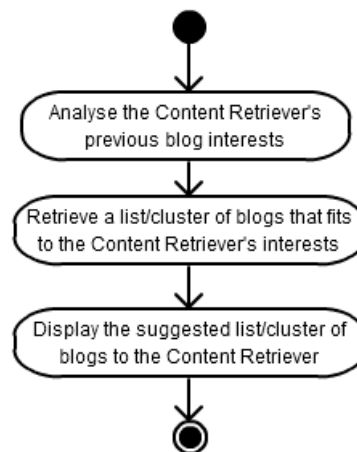


Figure 41: Activity Diagram for suggesting blog content to the Content Retriever

## FR29 – Detect and remove spam

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Spam should be detected and excluded from further analysis or search queries.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Businesses: (Can you identify any problems or issues with the procedures you are currently following?) “[...] removing spam and sort of extracting the right content [...]”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Spam is detected and excluded from analysis and search results.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 29.1: Add Spam Detection Service

<b>Use Case UCFR29.1</b>		Add Spam Detection Service
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can add online spam detection services for Spider
<b>Actors</b>		Spider, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Spider has validated content of the blog page
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Administrator views the Spider's Configuration Panel 2. The Administrator selects the online spam detection services to be used. 3. The Spider configures itself to use selected services
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator selects online spam detection services
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

Note: Same use case used in the requirements gathered from the DOW (UC17.1)

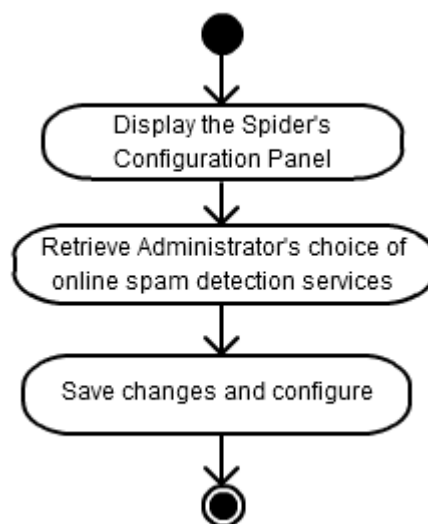


Figure 42: Activity Diagram for adding spam detection services

## Use Case UCFR 29.2: Remove Spam

<b>Use Case UCFR29.2</b>		Remove Spam
<b>Description</b>		The Spider detects and removes spam using online spam detection web services
<b>Actors</b>		Spider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Spider has established a connection with the blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Spider has detected and removed spam in the blog content
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Spider retrieves the list of the selected online spam detection services</li> <li>2. The Spider detects and removes spam in the blog content by using the spam detection services</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Spider has retrieved blog content
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

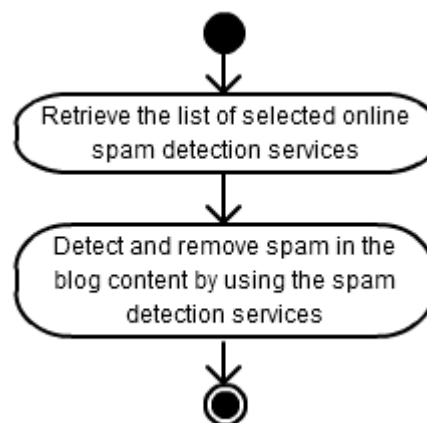


Figure 43: Activity Diagram for removing spam

## FR30 – Extract bibliographic metadata from blog contents

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional and User Interface Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The BlogForever Platform will be able to extract bibliographic metadata from various types of content embedded in blogs (e.g. PDF documents and latex files). Indexes will be populated with these metadata and searching/browsing will be available to users via special web interfaces.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admins - Organizations
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Interviewee says: We have extracted bibliographic metadata from PhD theses and scientific publications. [...] The challenge we faced had to do with the many different types of content from images (in various formats) to PDF & latex documents.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The user is able to view bibliographic metadata for archive content. Browsing and searching based on this type of metadata is also supported using appropriate web interface controls.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	Vangelis Banos

## Use Case UCFR 30.1: Extract Metadata

<b>Use Case UCFR30.1</b>		Extract Metadata
<b>Description</b>		The Platform is able to extract bibliographic metadata from various types of content embedded in blogs
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Platform has retrieved a blog content with embedded content such as PDF, latex files
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has extracted bibliographic metadata from the embedded content
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform parses the embedded content</li> <li>2. The Platform extracts bibliographic metadata from the parsed content</li> <li>3. The Platform associates the extracted metadata with the archived blog content</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Platform has retrieved a blog content with embedded content
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

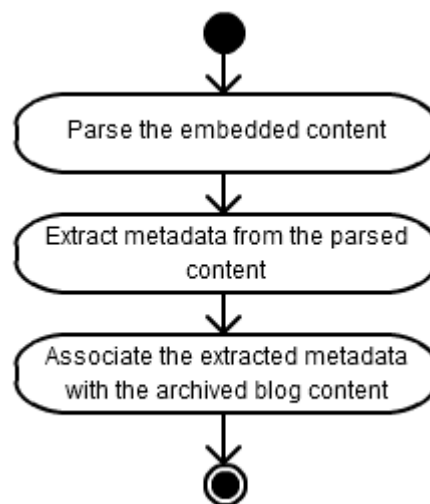


Figure 44: Activity Diagram for extracting metadata from embedded files such pdf, latex, etc.

## FR31 – Define important blogs and filter junk

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The BlogForever platform should be able to suggest a list of “important” blogs and filter “junk” blogs
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retrievers - Libraries
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interviewee says: He haven’t thought of archiving blogs and providing them to students because they are very “casual”, people write whatever they want with no control.</p> <p>He would like to have some “official” blogs from known entities. Example: the blog of NASA.</p> <p>It is difficult to filter junk blog from important ones.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The BlogForever platform admin interface should suggest “important” blogs which should be added to the archive and flag “junk” blogs which should be removed.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	Vangelis Banos

## Use Case UCFR 31.1: Filter & Flag Junk Blogs

<b>Use Case UCFR31.1</b>		Flag Junk Blogs
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can define a blog as “junk”
<b>Actors</b>		Administrator, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed a blog
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has flagged a blog as “junk”
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Administrator selects “junk” from the available flag list 2. The Platform flags the blog as “junk” 3. The Platform removes all the blogs flagged as junk on a prescheduled time
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Platform has retrieved Administrator’s flag choice
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

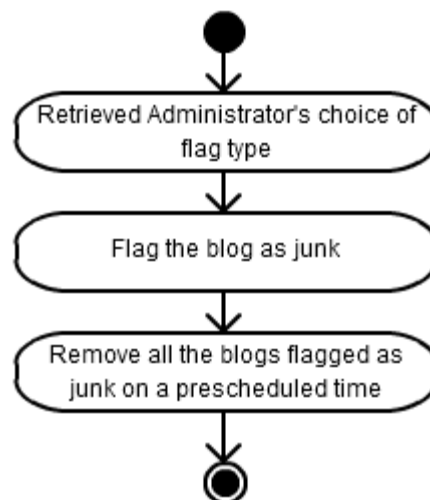


Figure 45: Activity Diagram for filtering and junk blogs as junk



## Use Case UCFR 31.2: Flag as Important

<b>Use Case UCFR31.2</b>		Flag as Important
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can define a blog as “important”
<b>Actors</b>		Administrator, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed a blog
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has flagged a blog as “important”
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Administrator selects “important” from the available flag list 2. The Platform flags the blog as “important”
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Platform has retrieved Administrator’s flag choice
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

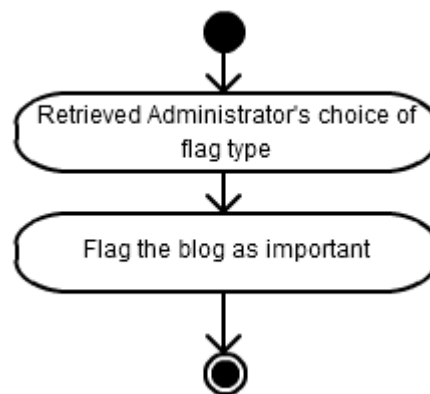
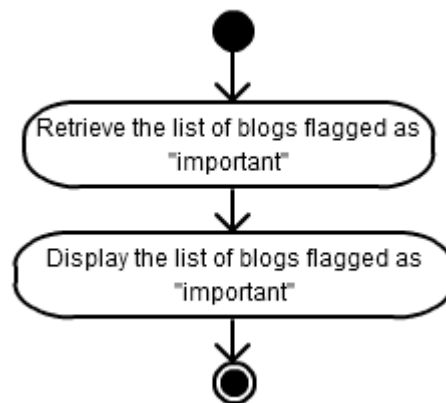


Figure 46: Activity Diagram for flagging a blog as “important”

## Use Case UCFR 31.3: Suggest Important Blogs

<b>Use Case UCFR31.3</b>		Suggest Important Blogs
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can define a blog as “important”
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has suggested a list of blogs flagged as “important”
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform retrieved blogs flagged as “important” 2. The Platform displays the list of blogs flagged as “important”
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever logs in to the BlogForever Platform
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 47: Activity Diagram for suggesting blogs flagged as “important”**

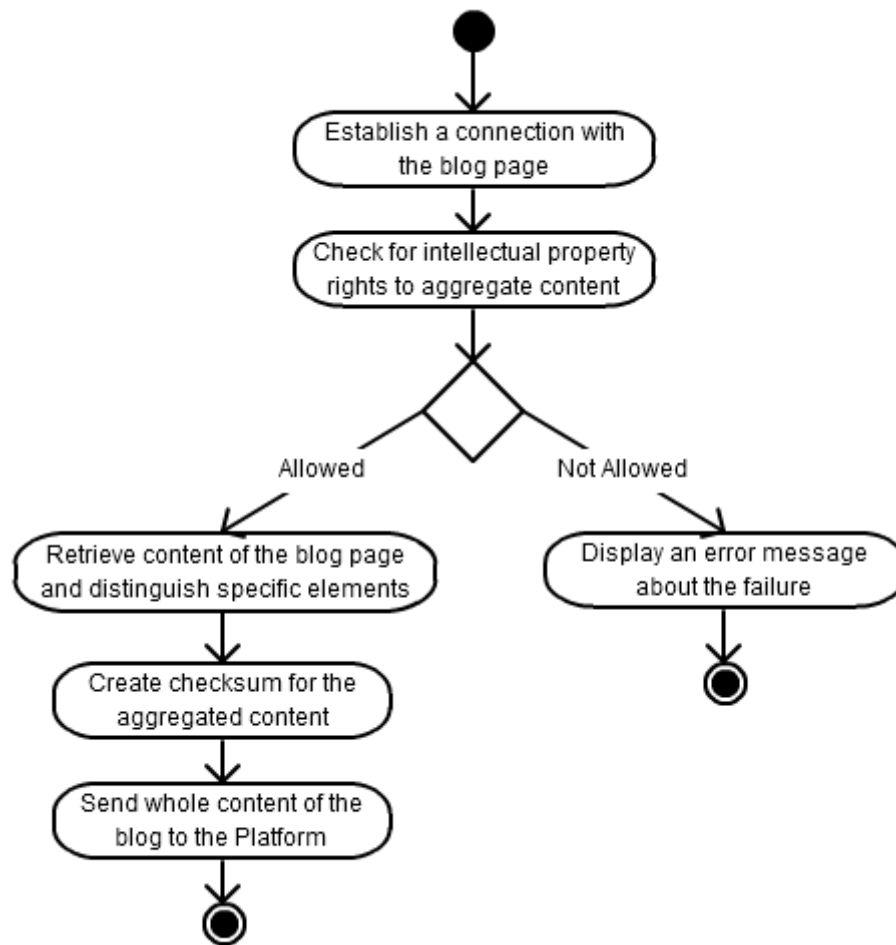
## FR32 – Add user suggested blogs to the archive

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The BlogForever platform should enable users to suggest a new blog to be added in the archive for aggregation, preservation, management & dissemination. The suggestion should be done by adding an RSS URL.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retrievers – Libraries, Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interviewer: It would be good for each user to monitor his/her own set of blogs and also add a new blog to the system. It would be good to submit an RSS of a blog and the system would start monitoring it.</p> <p>Blog Author: “You don’t want just 13 hundred random blogs. You don’t want: “anyone can submit a blog”, because you get ten useful blogs and 25 spam blogs, which would be a big problem.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The user can add a blog RSS URL to the suggested blogs list. The BlogForever platform will start aggregating this blog according to the system policies. (Probably, there should be a confirmation from the administrator)
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 32.1: Aggregate Content

<b>Use Case UCFR32.1</b>		Aggregate Content
<b>Description</b>		The Spider aggregates content from the blog pages
<b>Actors</b>		Spider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has provided URL of the blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The content of the blog page has been aggregated by the Spider
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Spider establishes a connection with the blog page</li> <li>2. The Spider checks for intellectual property rights if the Content Provider restricted access to the blog content or not</li> <li>3. If it is allowed, the Spider retrieves the content of the blog and distinguishes specific elements</li> <li>4. UCFR29.2</li> <li>5. The Spider creates checksum for the aggregate content</li> <li>6. The Spider sends all the content (weblog posts, user comments, metadata, etc.) to the Platform</li> <li>7. Otherwise, display an error message about the failure</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever's aggregation request or the Administrator's approval
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

Note: Same use case used in the requirements gathered from the DOW (UC16.1)



**Figure 48: Activity Diagram for content aggregation**

## FR33 – Dissemination of newly archived items in external social platforms (ex. Twitter) in connection with author profiles

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The idea is that the BlogForever platform has an account in a social network (e.g. Twitter). If the author wants this service, he/she inserts his/her account (or the account related to their blog). When a new post is archived, the platform account will post a message (e.g. a tweet) mentioning the author's account.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Interview#2~4:00: “We try to broaden our audience, CERN is followed by 300.000 people on twitter, so whenever we put a new blog there, we advertise it on this twitter thing, from that I get a few thousand people to look at it...”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The platform disseminates newly archived items in social networks and mentions thereby the author's account.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 33.1: Add Social Network Account

<b>Use Case UCFR 33.1</b>		Add Social Network Account
<b>Description</b>		Blog authors can insert their social network accounts to the Platform so that when a new content is archived, the Platform's account can post a message by mentioning the authors account
<b>Actors</b>		Content Provider, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Provider is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Provider has added a social network account
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Provider displays his/her profile page 2. The Content Provider enters his/her social account details 3. The Platform stores the information
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on button
<b>Variations</b>		

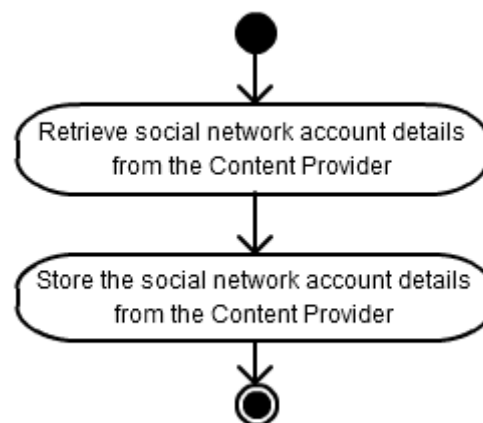
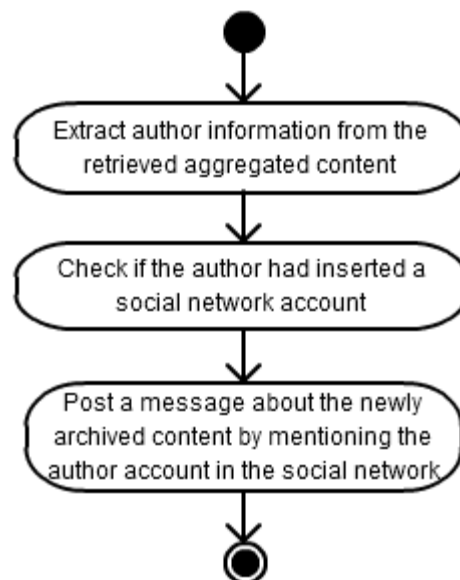


Figure 49: Activity Diagram for inserting a social network account to the Platform

## Use Case UCFR 33.2: Disseminate Blog Post

<b>Use Case UCFR 33.2</b>		Disseminate Blog Post
<b>Description</b>		The platform disseminates newly archived items in social networks and mentions thereby the author's account.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Platform has retrieved aggregated content from the Spider
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has posted a message about the new content
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform extracts the author information from the aggregated content</li> <li>2. The Platform checks if the author had inserted a social network account</li> <li>3. If yes, The Platform posts a message about the newly archived content by mentioning the authors account in the social network</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Platform retrieves aggregated content from the Spider
<b>Variations</b>		



**Figure 50: Activity Diagram for dissemination of a blog post**



## FR34 – Topic/Subject detection

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Topic or subject of a blog and blog post should be detected automatically. Thereby, blogs and blog posts can be differentiated and aggregated by topics or subjects.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog author: “I would something that is a little bit more insightful. I know that there are text analysis software packages available that you run it through, EPSS or whatever. So, that would be kind of interesting. Comparing the focus, you know, Stephen talks a lot about cognitive structures than George who talks mostly about social structures that would be kind of interesting. I think that would be really hard to do though. But because it is hard to do, that is probably why it would be interesting.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Topics/subjects of blogs and blog posts are detected automatically.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: UCFR2.1 and UCFR32.1 can apply here

## FR35 – Detection and ranking of the originality

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It would be very beneficial for archive users to explore which blogs or authors provide the most original posts. Similar criteria like uniqueness or factual trueness are possible as well.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog author: “What really interests me about my blog (with respect to inter-relations to other people) is whether it is first to come out with a concept or an idea, and I have no idea if you guys can rank that or if you can rank that automatically. It interests me if I authored a unique (well, no, not even unique, it doesn’t need to be unique), an informed, an insightful perspective or a point of view that matters. I would prefer to be right more often than other blogs. To me, the number one ranking would be: “I have more factually true statements in my blog than any other blog”, demonstrably and knowably so. But who is going to rank then based on that? And you do not want to rank that trivially, because someone will just start posting dictionary articles, and they get lots of factually true statements. So, say, the highest number of factually true statements that are contextually relevant to the current debate.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Originality and similar concepts are detected and ranked.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 35.1: Originality Ranking

<b>Use Case UCFR 35.1</b>		Originality Ranking
<b>Description</b>		The Platform is able to detect and rank the originality of the blog posts
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Platform has been schedule to go through all the blog posts
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has ranked the blog posts according to their originality
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform starts to go through all the blog posts 2. The Platform determines the originality of each blog post 3. The Platform ranks the blog post according to its originality
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The prescheduled time has come
<b>Variations</b>		

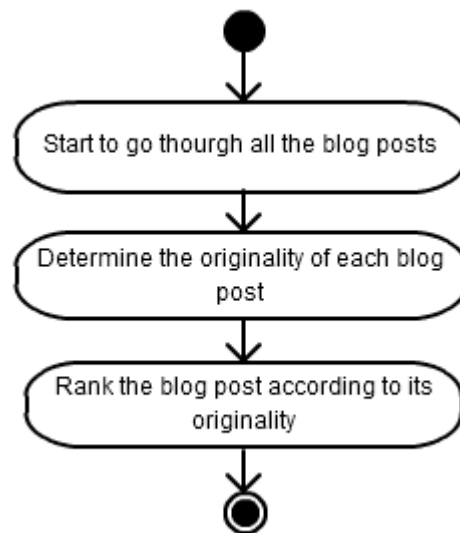


Figure 51: Activity Diagram for originality ranking

## 4.2 Data Requirements

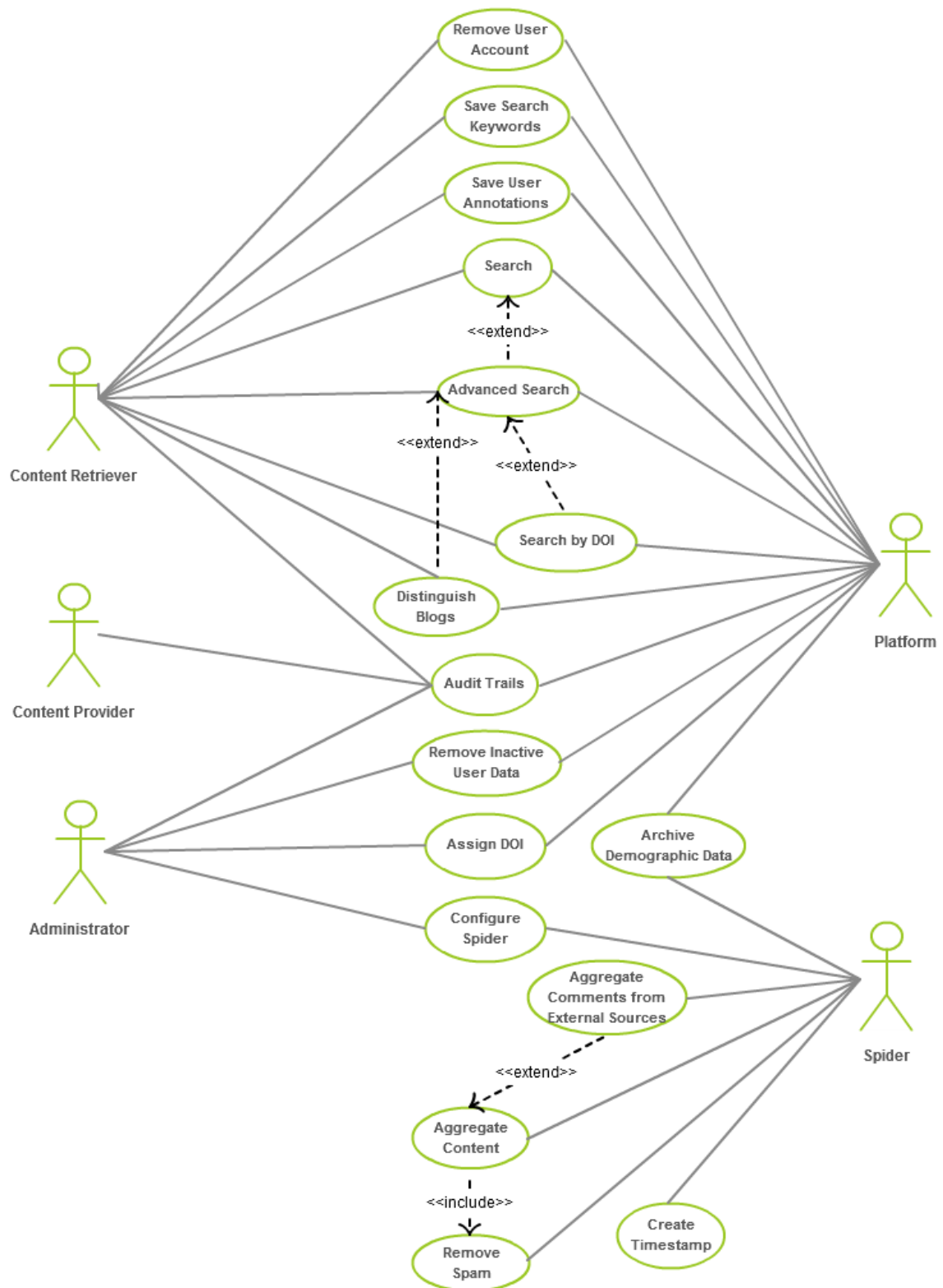
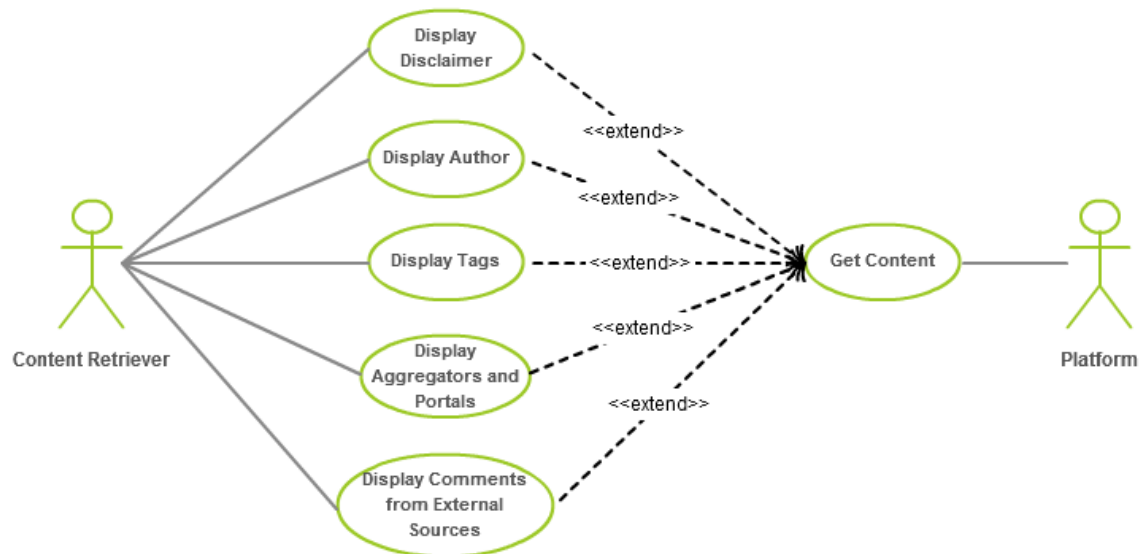


Figure 52: Use Case Diagram 1 for the Data Requirements



**Figure 53: Use Case Diagram 2 for the Data Requirements**

The following requirements are also data requirements but have already been defined above. Therefore, they are presented here but are not described again:

- FR5 – Descriptive statistics for a single blog or blog post
- FR6 – Processing of Licenses
- FR8 – Topics (Categories) for blogs and blog posts
- FR9 – Content translation

## DR1 – Rights and Licenses

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement, User Interface
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Blogs (and embedded objects) can be published under a specific license or with specific rights. That information has to be stored and presented to the user. Content from other sources should be identified and associated with a disclaimer around copyright infringement to protect the archive and hosting institution.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog author, Content Retrievers – Libraries, Content Providers/Retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog author: “If I had anything that I thought would need rights on it, I would use Creative Commons.” Library: We sign licence agreements with the external resources, so some of the articles, journals or content can only be used for academic purposes. If any users violate this rule, we kindly warn them. Interview#1~4:30: “At our organization we say: You can’t use that content, unless you ask for a specific permission, and there is a single website (with the copyright information) that describes that...” Blog author: “I use a Creative Commons, by-non-commercial share-like. It is supposed to be 3.0 [...]”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Licenses and Rights of a blog are stored in the archive and are presented to the user for every view/access on the blog or parts of the blog. The user should be able to view copyright information of the content. The copyright or license of the original content should be conserved, visible and applicable to the archived content as well.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Senan Postaci</li> <li>• Jaime García</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCDR 1.1: Get Content

<b>Use Case UCDR1.1</b>		Get Content
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can access blog content if s/he is authorized, otherwise cannot
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever clicks on a blog page to retrieve its contents
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever accesses blog content or gets an “access not authorized” message
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform checks if the Content Retriever is able to access blog content (against copyright, privacy, data protection laws)</li> <li>2. If yes, the Platform retrieves all the blog content and displays</li> <li>3. The Platform logs the Content Retriever information so that it can be tracked later</li> <li>4. Otherwise, The Platform displays an “access not authorized” message</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a link to the blog post
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

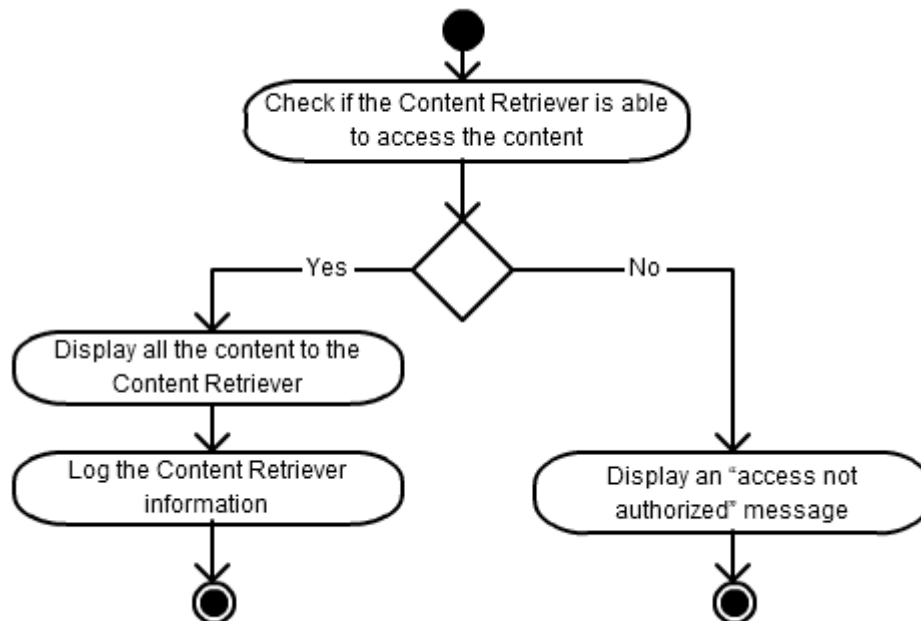


Figure 54: Activity Diagram for getting content

## DR2 – URI and metadata for referencing/citing

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It must be technically possible to reference or cite content from the archive. Therefore, a unique address for the content is required (unique resource identifier) and metadata about the author and date of creation should be presented if available.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author, Content Retriever Library
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: “But I would want it to be cited properly. If people were going to reuse content. If it were exhibition quality that people would going to reuse it for other purposes that they could actually correctly cite it. So, I think that would be important for many of the blog users I know. But if it was going to be some useful reference elsewhere, and not just for your access for reminding you what you have posted, then correct citation would rank pretty highly.” Library: Every electronic publication gets a permanent address in [in our archive]. It will be accessible under this address forever.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Every content that is presented as a single entity to the user (e.g. blog, blog post) has a unique address. Additionally, Metadata about the author and date of creation are presented.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>



## Use Case UCDR 2.1: Assign DOI

<b>Use Case UCDR 2.1</b>		Assign DOI
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can assign DOI to the content in the archive
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator views a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has assigned DOI to a blog page
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator enters a new DOI to a box provided</li> <li>2. The Platform checks if the DOI provided, used before</li> <li>3. If yes, the Platform displays an error message</li> <li>4. Otherwise, the Platform changes the DOI of the blog page</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator enters a DOI to a box provided
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

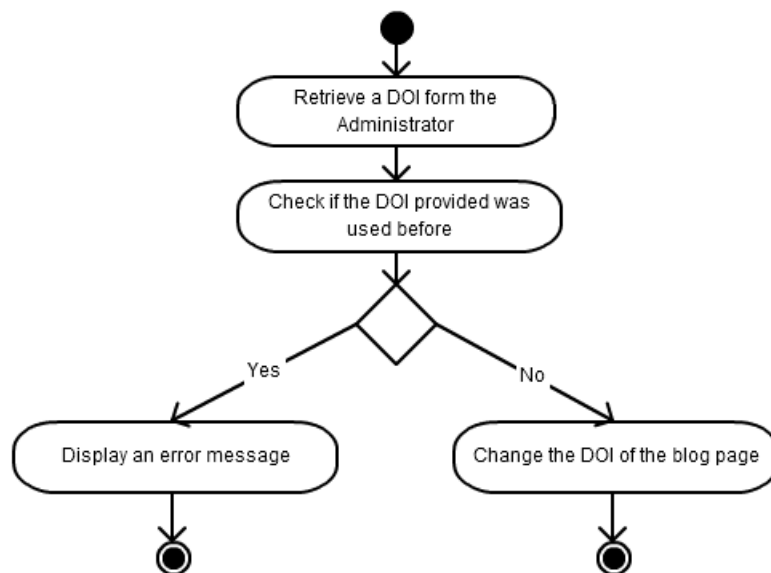


Figure 55: Activity Diagram for assigning a DOI to a blog page

## Use Case UCDR 2.2: Search by DOI

<b>Use Case UCDR 2.2</b>		Search by DOI
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can search a blog page by its DOI
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed the Advanced Search panel
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content has viewed search results
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever enters the DOI of the blog page through the Search Interface 2. The Content Retriever select “DOI” from the “category” box 3. The Platform displays the search result
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR13.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the DOI of the blog page
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

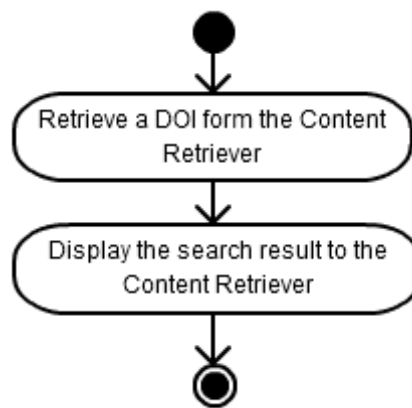


Figure 56: Activity Diagram for searching a blog page by its DOI

## DR3 - Disclaimer

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The disclaimer of a blog should be stored and presented with every part/content of the blog.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: “you can always have a disclaimer when you are producing any publication to say that you have done your best to capture what you have done with the authority that you thought you had to do it. And should anyone have any reason why they would like anything removed or corrected, then they have some point of contact. But that’s the general way, in this day and age; produce a disclaimer on publicising or archiving or reproducing any piece of work.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The disclaimer of a blog is stored and presented with every part/content of the blog.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCDR 3.1: Display Disclaimer

<b>Use Case UCDR3.1</b>		Display Disclaimer
<b>Description</b>		The disclaimer of a blog is displayed with every part/content of the blog.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever clicks on a blog page to retrieve its contents
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform displays the disclaimer of the blog
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform retrieves the disclaimer of the blog along with the blog content 2. The Platform displays the disclaimer with the blog content
<b>Parent</b>		UCDR1.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a link to the blog post
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

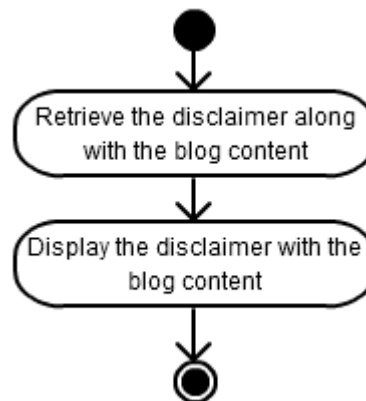


Figure 57: Activity Diagram displaying the disclaimer

## DR4 – Display the author of the blog, blog post, and comment

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement, User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The author of a blog, blog post or comment has to be presented.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Reader, Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog Reader: “That depends on who is the author. I think I have got to the point of selecting those that I will read, and I will have some confidence that they know what they are talking about.”</p> <p>Blog Author: “When I make comment on the other websites, much of the time (almost all of the times these days) they ask for an email address, name and website URL, which means my comment appears on the other website and when they click on my name, they go to my website.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The author of the blog, blog post, or comment is presented with the blog, blog post, or comment.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 15.1: Configure Spider” can apply here

## Use Case UCDR 4.1: Display Author

<b>Use Case UCDR4.1</b>		Display Author
<b>Description</b>		The author of a blog, blog post and comment is displayed with the blog, blog post, or comment.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever clicks on a blog page to retrieve its contents
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform displays the author(s) of the blog, blog post, or comments
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform retrieves the author(s) of the blog, blog post, comments along with the blog content 2. The Platform displays the author(s) of blog, blog posts and comments with the blog content
<b>Parent</b>		UCDR1.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a link to the blog post
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

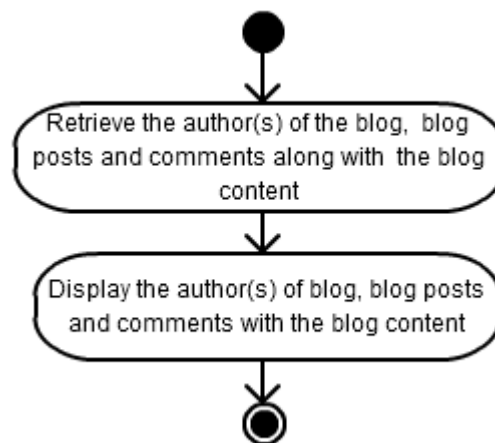


Figure 58: Activity Diagram displaying the author

## DR5 – Tags of the blog or blog post

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Tags of the blog or blog post should be stored and presented to the archive user.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Reader
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Reader: “Basic level tags [...]” Blog Reader: “they are good at making sure they have tagged up”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Tags of the blog or blog post are stored and presented to the archive user.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 15.1: Configure Spider” can apply here

## Use Case UCDR 5.1: Display Tags

<b>Use Case UCDR5.1</b>		Display Tags
<b>Description</b>		Tags of a blog or blog post are displayed to the users of the platform
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever clicks on a blog page to retrieve its contents
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform displays the tags of the blog and blog posts
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform retrieves the tags of the blog and blog posts along with the blog content 2. The Platform displays the tags of the blog and blog posts
<b>Parent</b>		UCDR1.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a link to the blog post
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

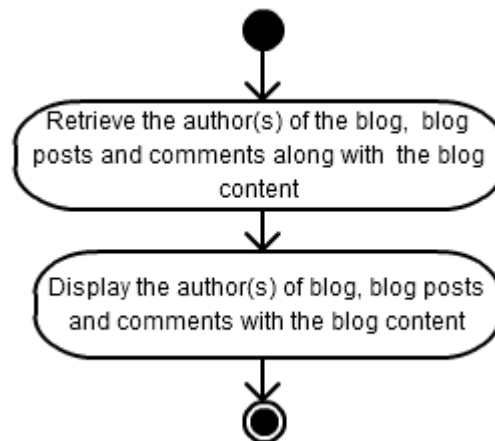


Figure 59: Activity Diagram displaying the tags of the blogs and blog posts



## DR6 – Metadata for captured contents

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Every captured digital object needs a description with regard to the content of the object (e.g. topic, language, etc.) and to technical aspects (e.g. formats).
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retriever Library, Researcher, Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Content Retriever Library: For every publication that goes into our archive, we describe the publication and we must have a technical description.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Descriptions with regard to the content and to technical aspects are stored for every digital object.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 15.1: Configure Spider” can apply here

## DR7 – Date/timestamp for creation and capturing

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It has to be stored when the captured content (e.g. blog post) has been created and when it has been captured.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retriever Library
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Library: Time is shown, when the Blog was gathered
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Date/Time is stored for the creation and for the capturing of content in the archive.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hendrik Kalb</li></ul>

## Use Case UCDR 7.1: Create Timestamp

<b>Use Case UCDR7.1</b>		Search by Ranking
<b>Description</b>		The Spider creates a timestamp information for the aggregated content
<b>Actors</b>		Spider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Spider has aggregated content
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Spider has sent the content to the Platform
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Spider creates a timestamp information 2. The Spider appends the time information to the content 3. The Spider sends all the content to the Platform
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Spider aggregates blog content
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

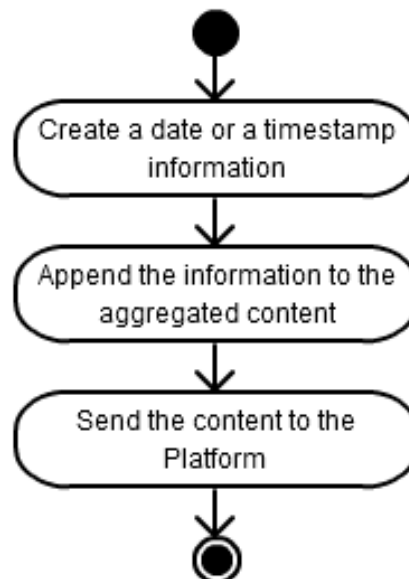


Figure 60: Activity diagram for creating time information

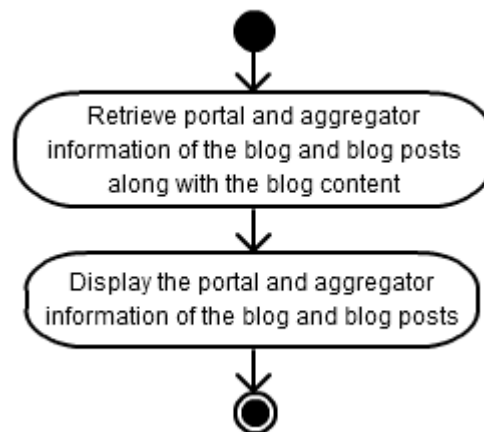
## DR8 – Aggregators & Portals

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A blog or blog posts can be published in several portals or presented by several aggregators. It should be stored where the captured blog or blog post occurred.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Researcher: “Because my focus is on science-blogs, I have used manually compiled lists of science-blogs, so there are some platforms which aggregate science-blogs like scienceblogs.com or scienceblogs.de or wissenslogs.de which is a German aggregator of scientific blogs”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	It is stored with the blog or blog post in which portal or aggregator the blog or blog post occurred.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 15.1: Configure Spider” can apply here

## Use Case UCDR 8.1: Display Portal and Aggregators

<b>Use Case UCDR8.1</b>		Display Portal and Aggregators
<b>Description</b>		Portal and aggregator in which blog or blog post occurred is displayed with the blog content
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever clicks on a blog page to retrieve its contents
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform displays the tags of the blog and blog posts
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform retrieves portal and aggregator information of the blog and blog posts along with the blog content</li> <li>2. The Platform displays the portal and aggregator information of the blog and blog posts</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCDR1.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a link to the blog post
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 61: Activity Diagram displaying the portal and aggregator information of the blogs and blog posts**

## DR9 – Connections/Links

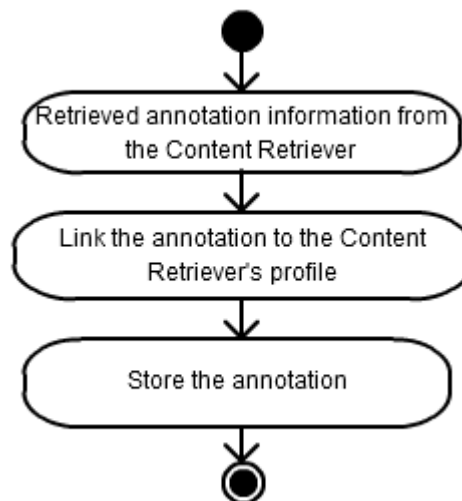
<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>(X) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>A blog creates connections to other blogs in several ways, e.g. blog roll, links in blog posts, etc. These connections have to be stored in an accessible way that allows a processing of the interconnections of blogs.</p> <p>The archive software should allow original blog interconnections data to be available to understand content connections and original cross –promotion paths.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher, Businesses, Content providers and content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Researcher: “Blogs are connected into networks through the blog-rolls so if there was a tool which could also compile the connected blogs that would help identifying relevant blogs”</p> <p>Businesses: “Knowing more about the blog site: [...] influencers etc. - for segmentation and analyzing”</p> <p>Content providers and content retrievers: One of the last Museum blog post in the University museums blog was linked to other blogs (Post Grad Blog). They used just linking (connect) tools and they provide cross-promotion. It is important aspect although some of the links don’t stay overtime.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Different kinds of links (blog roll, links inside posts, pingback, etc.) are stored separately.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## DR10 – User Annotations

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Archive users may want to annotate the content in the archive for several reasons, e.g. highlighting, commenting, etc. Therefore, the archive should be able to store the annotations for different users.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Researcher:” because working with the websites would be to actually be able to access the websites while they are online and put the codes in an extra layer - not sure if you are familiar with the Diigo bookmarking platform - there you can add your notes and markings to websites but they are not actually added to website but they are saved in Diigo as an extra layer and I think that would have been actually the solution which have been ideal so that you don't have to save the pages, so that you - you know you sort of bypass all this problem with format-saving and also with saving personal data which you have to do if you want to otherwise added into ATLAS.ti, so I think that would have been a nicely solution.”</p> <p>Researcher: I use <a href="http://www.mendeley.com/">http://www.mendeley.com/</a> and I like it very much! [...] I can highlight a part of a document and save this as a note.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive stores user annotations on archived content.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCDR 10.1: Save User Annotations

<b>Use Case UCDR10.1</b>		Save User Annotations
<b>Description</b>		The Platform can store the annotations for different users.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed a blog
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The annotations of the Content Retriever has been stored
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever annotates on the content</li> <li>2. The Platform links the annotation with the Content Retriever's profile.</li> <li>3. The Platform stores the annotation</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The user creates an annotation on archived content.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 62: Activity Diagram for saving user annotations**



## DR11 – Differentiate between blog and blog post

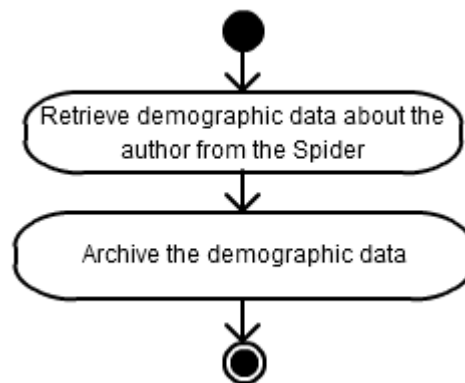
<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The whole blog as well as single blog posts can be interesting for archive users. Therefore, the archive should distinguish between the blog and blog posts. Access should be available for both perspectives.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Researcher: "I think it would be important for a software or platform to differentiate between the blog, as an entity which contains the text pages like the authors profile or description or whatever, and the posts which are chronological added."
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Blogs and blog posts are individually addressable/ can be accessed differently.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## DR12 - Demographics

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Analysis on blogs and blog content would benefit if demographic data about blog authors were available.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Businesses: “Within this getting metadata are there something metadata that’s sort of like the big issue? One really would need to have all that really challenge to get?” “Demographics”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Demographic data are stored with the blog authors.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCDR 12.1: Archive Demographic Data

<b>Use Case UCDR12.1</b>		Archive Demographic Data
<b>Description</b>		The Platform can archive the demographic data about the authors
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Spider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Spider has aggregated blog content
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The demographic data of the author has been stored
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Spider extracts demographic data of the author from the aggregated content</li> <li>2. The Spider sends the demographic data to the Platform</li> <li>3. The Platform archives the demographic data of the author</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Platform retrieves demographic data from the Spider
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 63: Activity Diagram for archiving demographic data about the author**

## DR13 - Comments

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Comments of a blog post have to be stored.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Businesses: "Comments - we currently don't cover this - which is regarded very interesting"
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Comments of a blog post are stored in the archive.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: "Use Case UCFR 15.1: Configure Spider" can apply here

## DR14 – Embedded objects

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Embedded objects (e.g. YouTube videos) should be stored in the archive.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Businesses: “Links and meta data - today we only capture text. Especially pictures and videos would be useful.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Embedded objects of a blog/blog post are stored in the archive.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 15.1: Configure Spider” can apply here

## DR15 – Visits of blogs and blog posts

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It should be stored for each blog or blog post how often does who visit the blog or post in the archive.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: You can see the visitors and what they have visited.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Visitors/Visits of a blog or blog post are stored.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCDR 15.1: Audit Trails

<b>Use Case UCDR15.1</b>		Audit Trails
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can track all the operations (Who accessed? When? Content updated?, etc.) on a blog page
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator, Content Retriever, Content Provider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The user (Admin, CR, CP) displays a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The user views all the operations on blog pages
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The user clicks on a link/button/tab</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves a list of all the operations performed on a blog page (all accesses, access times, changes, etc....)</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the operations to the user</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The user clicks on a link/button/tab
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



Figure 64: Activity diagram for auditing trails on a blog page

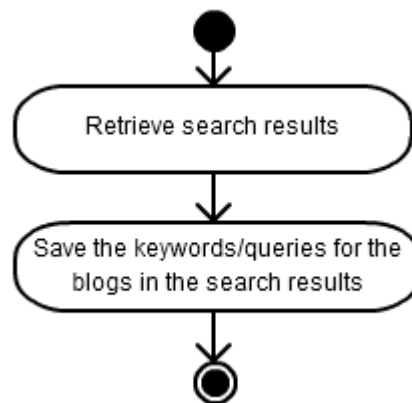
## DR16 – Search key words

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It should be stored by which key words a blog or blog post in the archive has been searched and found in a search via search machine (e.g. Google search)..
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: I can see which key words they have used in the search machine.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	It is stored which key words were used to find the blog or blog post via search machine.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>



## Use Case UCDR 16.1: Save Search Keywords

<b>Use Case UCDR16.1</b>		Save Search Keywords
<b>Description</b>		The Platform stores the keywords that are used to find a blog or blog post via search machine
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has entered keywords and pressed “Search” button
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has saved the keywords/queries for the blogs that are in the search result
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform retrieves the search results 2. The Platform saves the keywords/queries for the blogs in the search results
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR14
<b>Trigger</b>		The user clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 65: Activity diagram for saving search results**

## DR17 – Metadata for blogs

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>Metadata should be available for a blog. Metadata describe</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Language of the blog</li> <li>• Categorisation in hobby-blog, professional blog, etc.</li> <li>• Is it a individual blog, company blog, or institution blog</li> <li>• Subject/Topic of the blog,</li> <li>• Geographical information</li> </ul>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher, Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Researcher: “[...] concerning the subject of the blog or a sort of categorization if it's a hobby-blog or if it's a professional blog and also meta-data concerning the owner, if it's an individual blog or a company-blog or institution-blog.”</p> <p>Businesses: “in some cases the border between journalism and blogging, professional journalism and blogging, is very thin and we basically want to keep the data so that it serves consumer, brands as well as possible and sometimes we for example because of that we exclude news items or news comments even though they are regarded as social media we exclude that from the data but that's optional so basically just try to have as good reach as possible within the right language and geographical context.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Metadata of a blog are stored in the archive.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 32.1: Aggregate Content” can apply here

## DR18 – Remove private data of archive users

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It may be necessary that user data are removed/deleted when the archive user does not use the archive anymore. Therefore, usage data of archive users should be captured only if really necessary and should be removed after the user has left the archive.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retriever Library
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Library: We do neither track what current users are reading or accessing nor do we store user data a long time after they have visit us the last time. We delete the data as soon as the library card ends.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	User data are removed automatically after a specific period (e.g. six month after the last login) or point in time (e.g. the user has to prolong archive membership every year).
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCDR 18.1: Remove Inactive User Data

<b>Use Case UCDR18.1</b>		Remove Inactive User Data
<b>Description</b>		Remove the user data (profile of user, comments, etc.) if the user does not login for a specific period.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. Inactive users and their private data are removed.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator enters a specific period.</li> <li>2. The Platform checks every user's last login time.</li> <li>3. If there are users who are inactive during the specified period, remove their data.</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator specifies a period for the Platform to scan inactive users.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

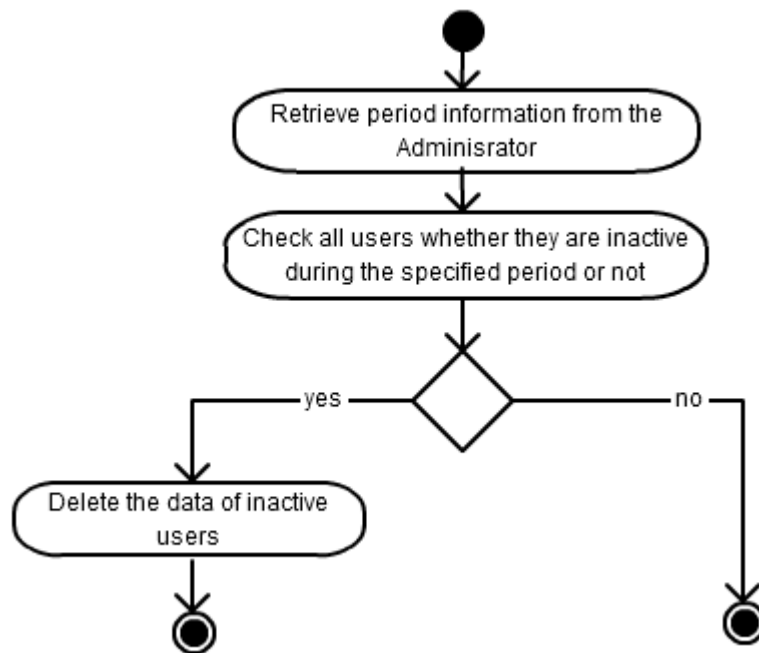


Figure 66: Activity Diagram for removing inactive users

## Use Case UCDR 18.2: Remove User Account

<b>Use Case UCDR18.2</b>		Remove User Account
<b>Description</b>		The users of the platform can delete their account and user data (profile of user, comments, etc.)
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed his/her profile page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The account and user data of the Content Retriever has been deleted
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on a "Remove Account" button</li> <li>2. The Platform displays a dialog page about removing/keeping the Content Retriever's user data</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever selects the "Remove" option (rather than "Keep")</li> <li>4. The Platform removes the Content Retriever's account and his/her user data</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

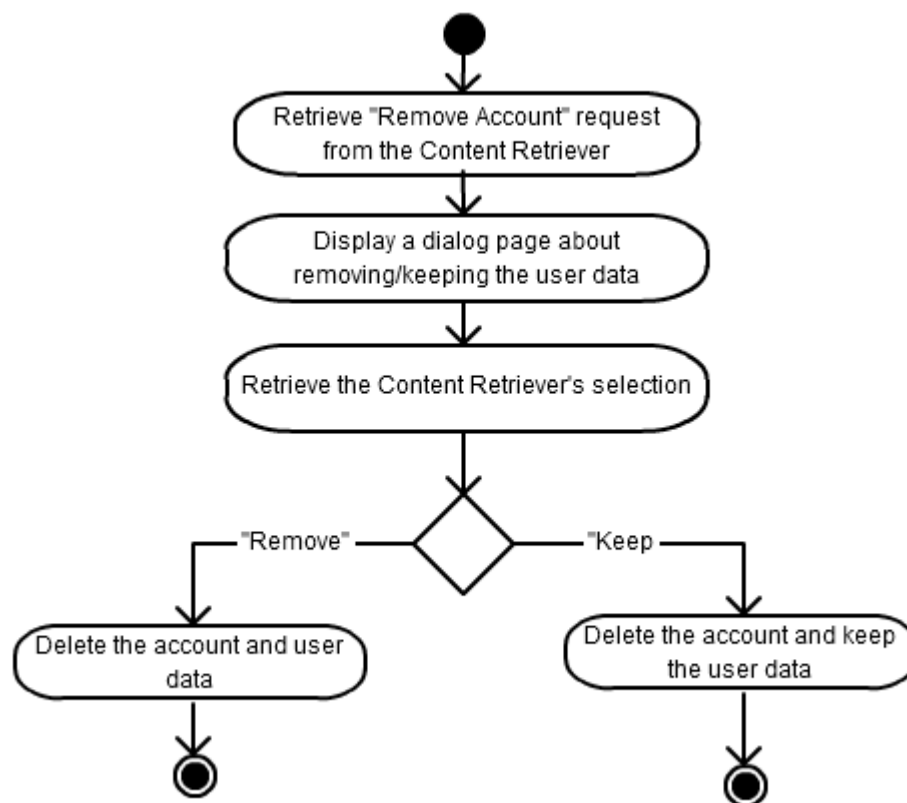


Figure 67: Activity Diagram for removing user accounts and data

## DR19 – Distinguish institutional/corporate blogs from personal blogs

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	If the repository size becomes very big, it might be easier to navigate if institutional/corporate blogs are separated from personal blogs.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interview#1 ~16:10</p> <p>“If you imagine a system where there are personal blogs, versus corporate, institutional blogs, you mind want to separate them, with different facets...”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Institutional/corporate blogs and personal blogs are distinguished and can be searched separately.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCDR 19.1: Distinguish Blogs

<b>Use Case UCDR19.1</b>		Distinguish Blogs
<b>Description</b>		The user is able to narrow down the search result (e.g. results from personal blogs).
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed Advance Search panel
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The search results are displayed
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search keywords</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever selects a field from the available fields</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever selects a blog type (personal, institutional, etc.)</li> <li>4. The Platform executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>5. The Platform retrieves the matching records</li> <li>6. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR13.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The clicks search button.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

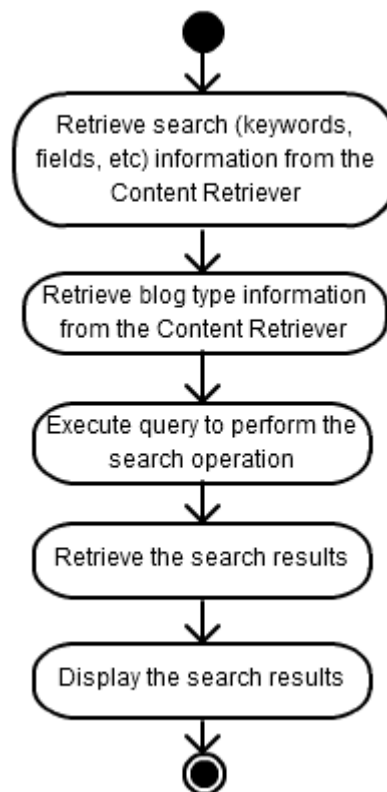


Figure 68: Activity Diagram for distinguishing blogs

## DR20 - Blog comments from several sources

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>Data comments attached to their content from different sources amalgamated in one place of the blog post archived, easy to access and well connected to their corresponding post, in particular the comments coming from social media links (the Research Institute Facebook page has increased their comments levels so they need to see those in the blog archive). The comments originated in social media applications should be listed under the logo of these social media sources.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Providers, Content providers and content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Phrases from the interview:</p> <p>The low number of comments is maybe due to the Research Institute very institutional or very academic background. It seems that the Research Institute Facebook page linked to their blog posts is providing a more flexible platform for comments.</p> <p>People engaging with the historical content to enhance their content (a better resource for everybody).</p> <p>The Research Institute is keen in additions and enhancement to their content.</p> <p>Would you like to aggregate, manage &amp; analyze all your users' feedback? Please describe an ideal scenario. The answer for this question was:</p> <p>This software should fulfill: keeping content and the social media context around that content. Less concern about their blogs look and feel but they are very concerned about their content and its comments.</p> <p>Phrases from the interview:</p> <p>What would you describe as a "killer" application feature for a blog archiving service?</p> <p>Easy to use and that it should provide stats and popularity, comments and tweets feeds plus 'Like' icon usages as well. Social commentary around the blog should be available within this application. (Twitter is like a word of mouth so for example the comment from a German museum in their unofficial blog).</p> <p>Do you have any general comments on the development of blog aggregation, preservation, management &amp; dissemination software?</p>



---

	Easy to use + social media aspect of the blog.  New things coming up and changing of the social media, allowance to changes in social media in the future.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can find all the comments listed for a specific blog post divided into boxes with the comments source logo to recognize the original source easily and clearly.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li></ul>

---

## Use Case UCDR 20.1: Aggregate Comments from External Sources

<b>Use Case UCDR20.1</b>		Aggregate Comments from External Sources
<b>Description</b>		The Spider aggregates comments from external sources
<b>Actors</b>		Spider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has provided URL of the blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The content of the blog page has been aggregated by the Spider
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Spider looks for the comments of the blog/blog post in external sources</li> <li>2. The Spider aggregates the comments from external sources</li> <li>3. The Spider sends the aggregated content and comments from external sources to the Platform</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR32
<b>Trigger</b>		The Spider finds comments in external sources about the blog/blog posts
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

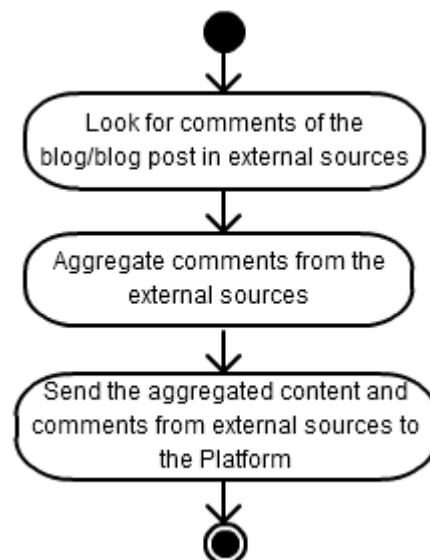
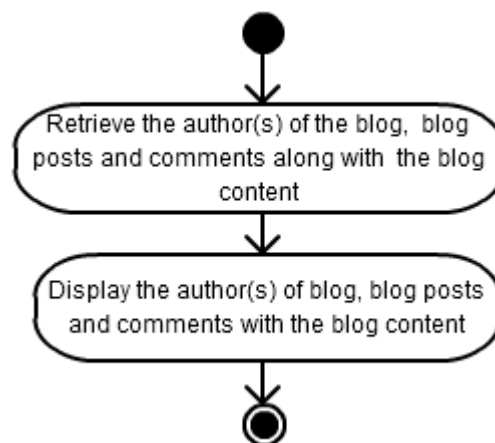


Figure 69: Activity Diagram for aggregating comment from external sources

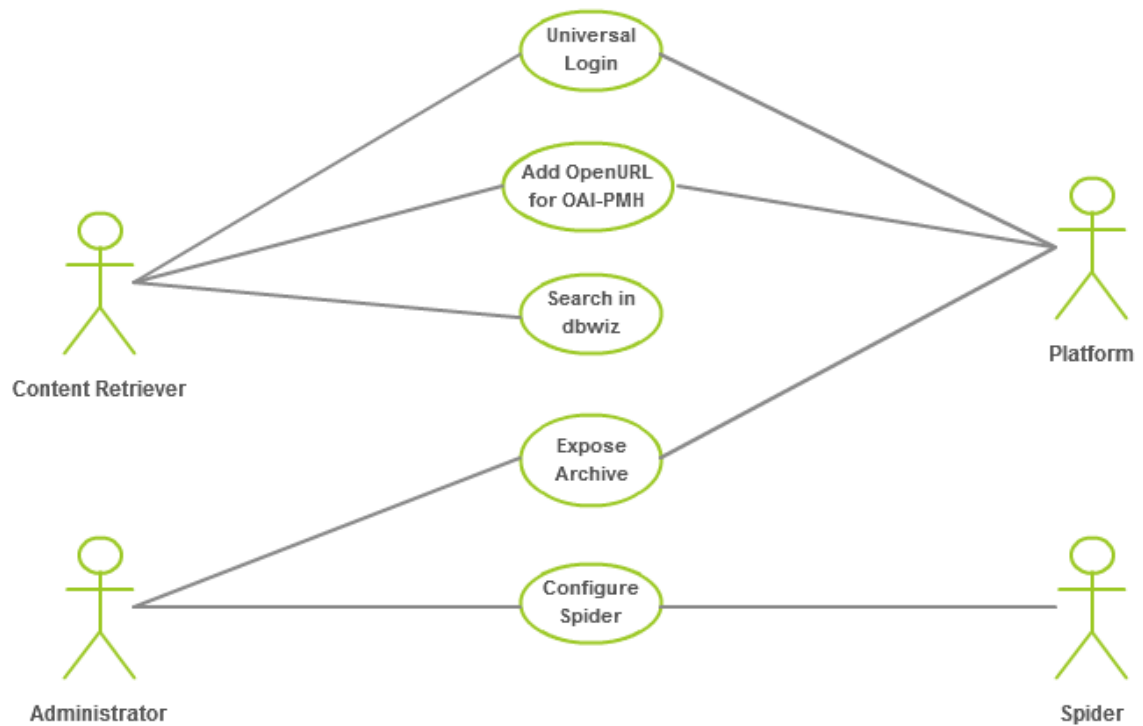
## Use Case UCDR 20.2: Display Comments from External Sources

<b>Use Case UCDR20.2</b>		Display Comments from External Sources
<b>Description</b>		Comments of a blog or blog post from external sources are displayed to the users of the platform
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever clicks on a blog page to retrieve its contents
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform displays the comments of the blog and blog posts from external sources
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform retrieves the comments of the blog and blog posts from external sources the along with the blog content</li> <li>2. The Platform groups the comments according to external source (i.e. comments from Facebook, comments from Twitter, etc.)</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the comment of the blog and blog posts in separate boxes each having the logo of the external source</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCDR1.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a link to the blog post
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 70: Activity Diagram displaying the tags of the blogs and blog posts**

### 4.3 Interoperability Requirements



**Figure 71: Use Case Diagram for the Interoperability Requirements**

The following requirement is also an interoperability requirement but has already been defined above. Therefore, it is presented here but is not described again:

- FR4 – Blog export

## IR1 – Single Sign On/Interoperates with Authentication System especially LDAP

<b>Requirement category</b>	Interoperability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>The archive should be able to interoperate with common authentication systems. This facilitates the integration of the archive in the existing IT environment and enables the provision of single sign on for users.</p> <p>The BlogForever Platform authentication mechanism should be able to connect to LDAP servers.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Organisation, Content Retrievers – Libraries, Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Admin: “then I would say that we would be interested in questions like authentication. We use Shibboleth as our single sign on platform, so we would be very keen on applications that would work well with that.”</p> <p>Admin: “It is not, really, an API type question, but we use OAuth, so that people can get their content which is in some sense protected without having to have an account with us. They can have an account with someone else and OAuth would let them get the things”</p> <p>Library: We provide a search engine to the users which enables them to search many articles, journals from external repositories and these repositories are connected with our LDAP server.</p> <p>Library: Our repositories are connected with the LDAP server of the University. Students and other users are authenticated via the LDAP to access the repositories. Apart from this, there is no other integration between repositories and library services.</p> <p>Blog Author: “So, it would be nice if such a system would actually support access to my blogging system, whatever that may be, through a mechanism such as OAuth or some such thing.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	<p>The archive can interoperate with authentication systems.</p> <p>The users can connect to a BlogForever archive by using LDAP authentication.</p>
<b>Author(s) of the requirement</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Senan Postaci</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> </ul>

### Use Case UCIR 1.1: Universal Login

<b>Use Case UCIR1.1</b>	Universal Login
<b>Description</b>	The users of the BlogForever Platform connect to the system with existing third party services or authentication mechanisms

<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. An account for the Content Retriever from the third party service or authentication mechanism must exist.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has been authenticated
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever specifies required information for login (for example: username, password...).</li> <li>2. The Platform sends the credentials of the Content Retriever to the third party service or authentication mechanism</li> <li>3. The Platform receives the result from the third party service or authentication mechanism</li> <li>4. The Platform navigates Content Retriever according to result received from the third party service or authentication mechanism</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever clicks on appropriate icon among the available third party services or authentication mechanisms
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

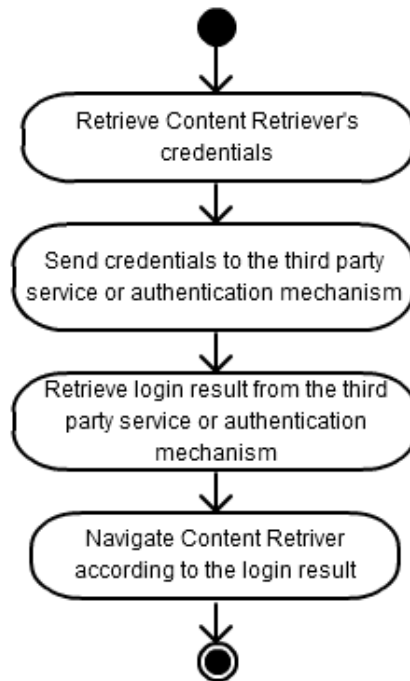


Figure 72: Activity Diagram for universal login

## IR2 – Capturing is possible for various platforms

<b>Requirement category</b>	Interoperability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Blogs are available on different platforms. The archive should not be restricted to only one kind of platform or software because it would limit the amount of blogs that can be archived extremely. Therefore, the archive respectively the spider should be able to capture blogs ideally from every platform or at least from the most common platforms.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Business
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Business: “diversity of the platforms where we can collect the data”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive respectively the spider captures blogs from the most common platforms.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 15.1: Configure Spider” can apply here

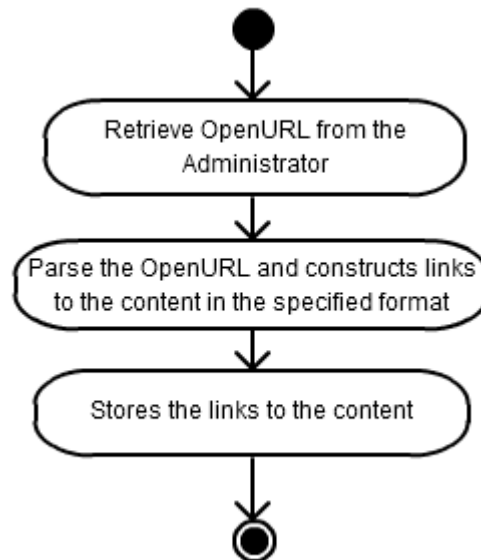
## IR3 - Export data using OAI-PMH protocol and Dublin Core schema

<b>Requirement category</b>	Interoperability Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>(X) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The BlogForever platform should enable data export using OAI-PMH protocol. & Dublin Core metadata schema in order to interoperate with other digital libraries.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admins – Organizations
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interviewee says: It is quite common to extract data from legacy systems in MARC and import them in a repository with Dublin Core metadata. Digital repositories support OAI-PMH and give data to europeanaLocal and other projects.</p> <p>Interviewer: Are you supporting any APIs/Technologies?</p> <p>Interviewee says: The most common is OAI-PMH, all repositories support it.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	An OAI-PMH interface is enabled, supporting at least Dublin Core Metadata Schema.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	Vangelis Banos



## Use Case UCIR 3.1: Add OpenURL for OAI-PMH

<b>Use Case UCIR3.1</b>		Add OpenURL for OAI-PMH
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can provide OpenURLs for the content that is exposed over the OAI-PMH protocol
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has created links to the content that are ready to export over OAI-PMH protocol
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator provides an OpenURL of the content</li> <li>2. The Platform parses the OpenURL and constructs links to the content in the specified format</li> <li>3. The Platform stores the links to content</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator enters an OpenURL
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 73: Activity Diagram for adding an OpenURL to export content over OAI-PMH**

## IR4 – Expose parts of the archive via OAI-PMH based on specified criteria

<b>Requirement category</b>	Interoperability requirements, Security Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The BlogForever platform should enable exposing different parts of the archive to different clients via OAI-PMH according to specified parameters & policy. (E.g. client identity, admin settings).
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admins - Organizations
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Interviewee says: We are looking into how OAI-PMH is mapping available data sets and how we can expose different data to different clients or present the same dataset in different ways.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	An administrator can select which parts of the archive are available via OAI-PMH. The administrator can setup different OAI-PMH endpoints and define which parts of the collection are available via these endpoints. Access to the endpoints is controlled via authentication (username/password, IP address) or is public.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	Vangelis Banos

## Use Case UCIR(IR) 4.1: Expose Archive

<b>Use Case UCIR4.1</b>		Expose Archive
<b>Description</b>		The BlogForever platform can expose different parts of the archive to different clients via OAI-PMH according to specified parameters
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has created a new OAI-PMH end point for a specific part of the archive
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator defines a new OAI-PMH end point</li> <li>2. The Administrator specifies the security policy for the new endpoint (IP restrictions, authentication settings, etc.)</li> <li>3. The Administrator specifies the parts of the archive that will be available via new end point</li> <li>4. The Platform exposes the specified content over the new OAI-PMH endpoint</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever sends a request over OAI-PMH protocol
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

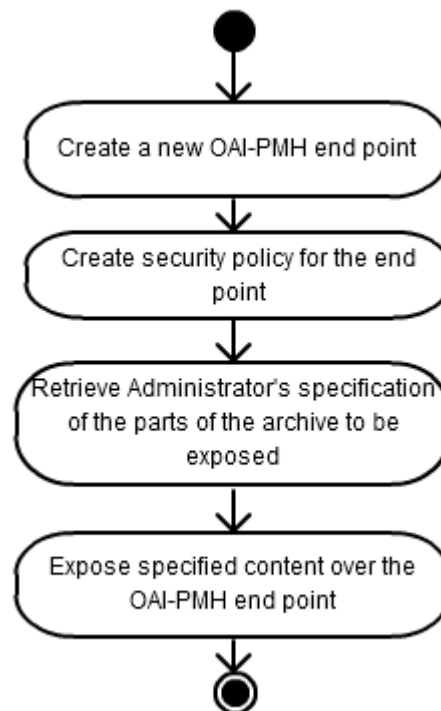


Figure 74: Activity Diagram for exposing content over an OAI-PMH endpoint

## IR5 – Connection with federated search engine dbwiz

<b>Requirement category</b>	Interoperability Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The BlogForever platform should be able to interoperate with federated search engine software dbwiz ( <a href="http://researcher.sfu.ca/dbwiz">http://researcher.sfu.ca/dbwiz</a> ) via OAI-PMH.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retrievers - Libraries
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Interviewee says: The library has a federated search engine ( <a href="http://pantou.lib.uom.gr">http://pantou.lib.uom.gr</a> ,dbwiz based) which is connected with many sources including the open repository of the University.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A dbwiz software installation can add BlogForever archive in its sources and perform federated search in its content.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	Vangelis Banos

## Use Case UCIR(IR) 5.1: Search in dbwiz

<b>Use Case UCIR5.1</b>		Search in dbwiz
<b>Description</b>		The users of the platform are able to search content in the archive by using a dbwiz installation
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. Content Retriever has displayed the dbwiz search interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has retrieved the search results
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search keywords</li> <li>2. dbwiz retrieves a list of the search results from the BlogForever Platform</li> <li>3. dbwiz displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever has provided the search keywords in dbwiz
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

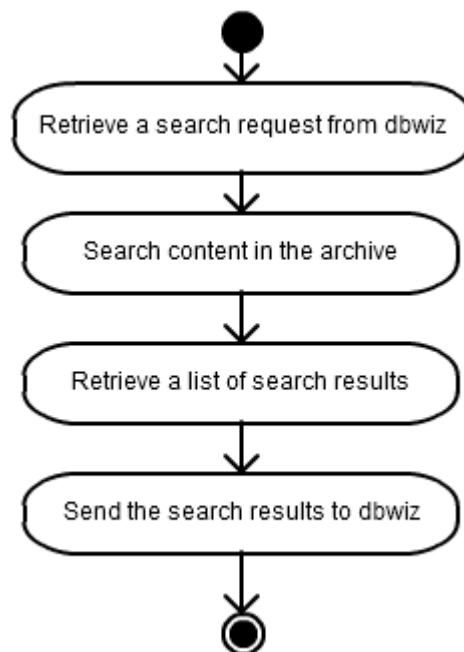
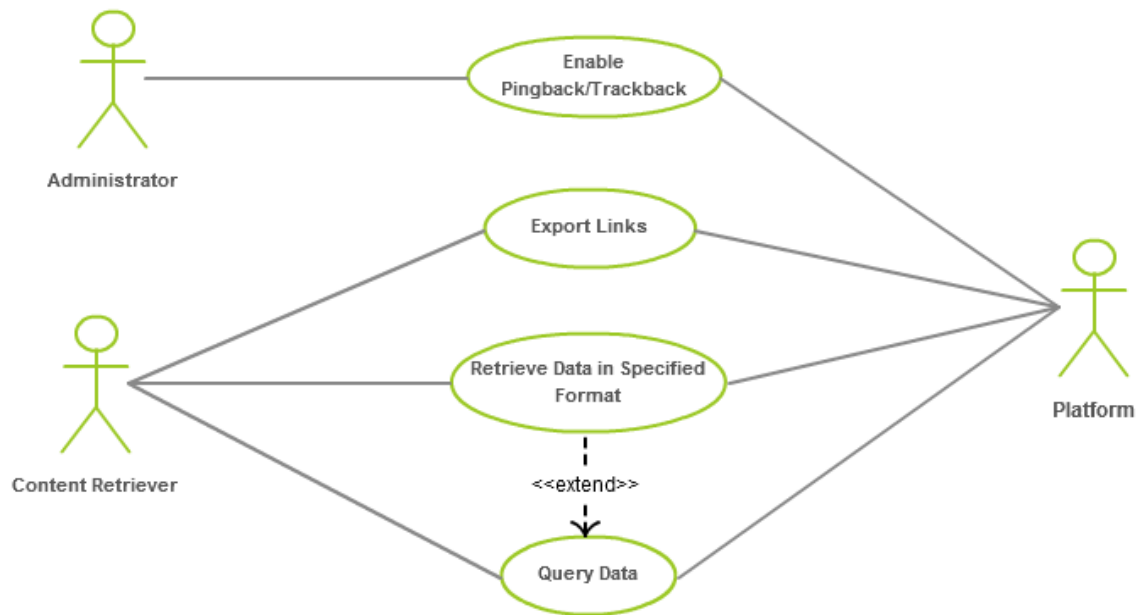


Figure 75: Activity Diagram for searching in dbwiz



**Figure 76: Use Case Diagram for the External Interface Requirements**

## EI1 – API for external clients to query data

<b>Requirement category</b>	External Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>( ) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>(X) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>An application programming interface (API) for external clients enables the access on the archive and facilitates the development of third party applications based on the archive. Therefore, the API should provide the possibility to query and to retrieve data from the archive.</p> <p>The platform should be able to export data sets with special characteristics (large volume, machine readable, ready to use, with links between content – graphs) on demand.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses, Content Retriever Library, Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Businesses: “we provide an API so that you can query from the API both chart data and [...] data”</p> <p>Business: “Well, in the future I see the combining the data that we provide with web analytics data and perhaps even business intelligence data on a higher level but there is a need to combine different data sources”</p> <p>Researcher: I have analysed graphs coming from Facebook. I am looking into datasets from many sources, so I have also handled social graph datasets. The techniques for analysing graphs are common.</p> <p>Researcher: I use data sets created by others. I work on Information Retrieval that is very relevant to blogs, there is much information in blogs that I can extract and use in my research.</p> <p>Researcher: I would also be able to use such a tool to extract large amounts of data which would be real and ready to use. Then I could extract the links and generate the graphs for my research. There is so much interest in real graph data nowadays.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	An API is available that enables external clients to query and to retrieve data from the archive.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> </ul>

### Use Case (EI) 1.1: Query Data

<b>Use Case UCEI1.1</b>	Query Data
<b>Description</b>	The Content Retriever can use an API to query data in the archive.
<b>Actors</b>	Platform, Content Retriever

<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is registered.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. Query results are provided to Content Retriever.
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever provides his/her account information to the API. 2. The Content Retriever enters keywords that s/he wants to query 3. The Content Retriever executes a method of the API 4. The Platform checks authentication. 5. The Platform executes the query retrieved from Content Retriever. 6. The Platform returns the query results to the Content Retriever
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever executes a method of the API
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

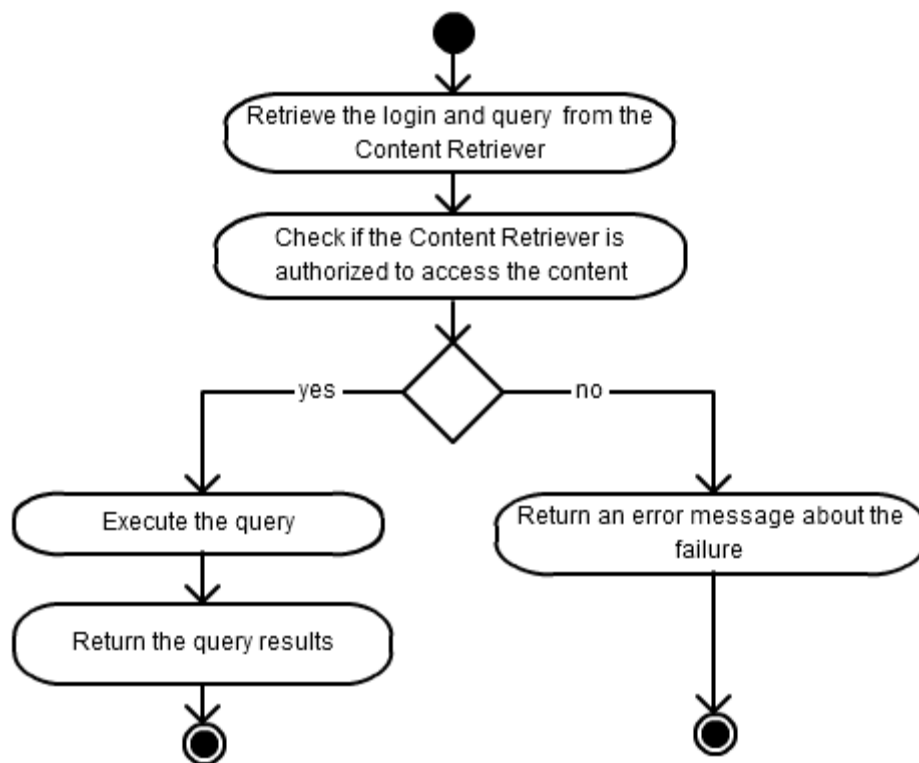


Figure 77: Activity Diagram for querying data using the API



## **EI2 – Data access/export as XML**

<b>Requirement category</b>	External Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archived data/contents should be available for external clients in XML format. This facilitates the processing of the data in external applications.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Business, Admin Organisation
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Business: “Just generally, I think social media can be just through XML, I mean just getting all the documents at the same format [...], that’s one way to look at it”</p> <p>Admin: “We do the same with our discussion forum system, where you can ask for the content of a particular forum to be given to you as an XML document of some sort that you can take and use elsewhere.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archived data/contents are accessible in a XML format.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case (EI) 2.1: Retrieve Data in Specified Format

<b>Use Case UCEI2.1</b>		Retrieve Data in Specified Format
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can access/export the content in the format s/he specifies.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever accessed the content in the format s/he specified.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the necessary information (login, keywords, etc.)</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever specifies the content format (XML, CSV, etc.)</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever executes a method of the API</li> <li>4. The Platform checks authentication.</li> <li>5. The Platform executes the query retrieved from Content Retriever.</li> <li>6. The Platform returns the query result in the specified format</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCEI1.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever executes a method of the API
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

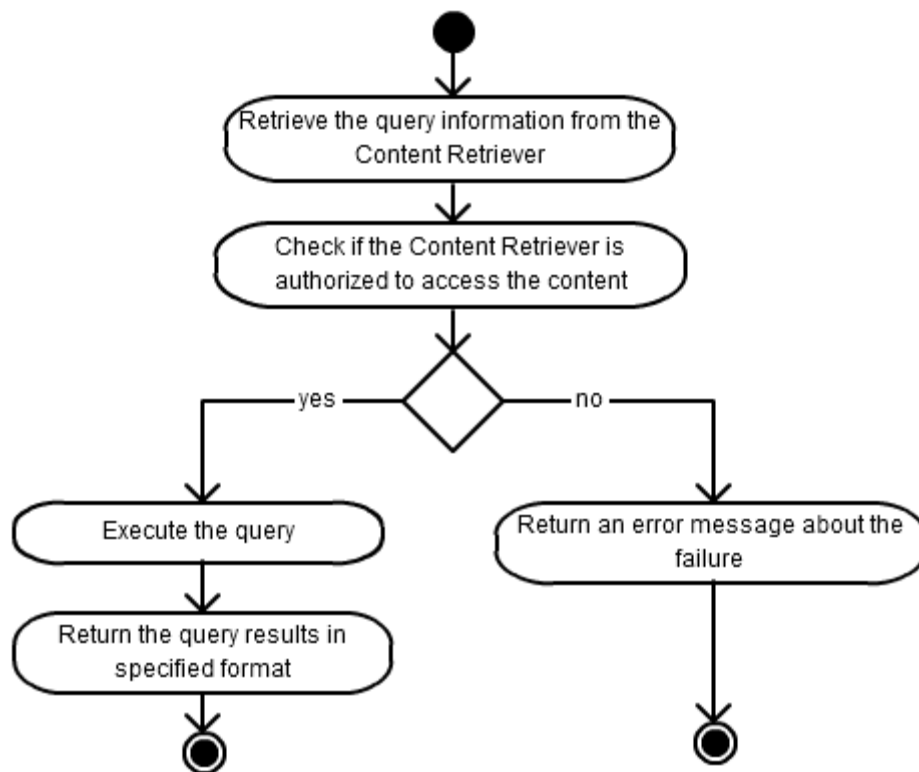


Figure 78: Activity diagram for retrieving data in specified data format

## EI3 – Pingback, Trackback

<b>Requirement category</b>	External Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive should enable pingback / trackback to facilitate connections between the archived contents and external resources. Thereby, the archive can show if external blogs are referencing archived content.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Blog Host
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin: We use trackback, pingback, etc.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Pingback/trackback is enabled for archived contents.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case (EI) 3.1: Enable Pingback/Trackback

<b>Use Case UCEI3.1</b>		Enable Pingback/Trackback
<b>Description</b>		Pingback/trackback is enabled for archived contents.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. Administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform enables Pingback/Trackback
<b>Steps</b>		1. Administrator enables Pingback/Trackback so that the archive will show if external sources references the archived content
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator's selection of choice
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

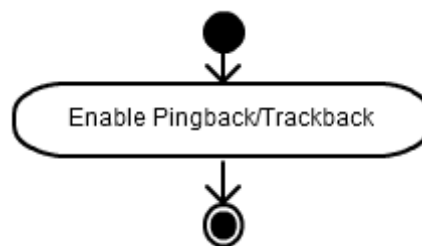


Figure 79: Activity diagram for enabling Pingback/Trackback

## **EI4 – Accessible via search machines**

<b>Requirement category</b>	External Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive should be accessible with external search machines, e.g. Google.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retriever Library
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Library: The simplest way would be if we could manage that the repository could be retrieved via common search machines.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive is accessible via search machines.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## EI5 – Export as CSV

<b>Requirement category</b>	External Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archived content/data can be processed/analysed in external applications if they can be exported as comma-separated values (CSV, character-separated values).
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Researcher: “But I think also for quantitative analyses something like CSV-format so it could be imported to Excel or SPSS whatever would be useful.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Archived content/data can be exported as CSV.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

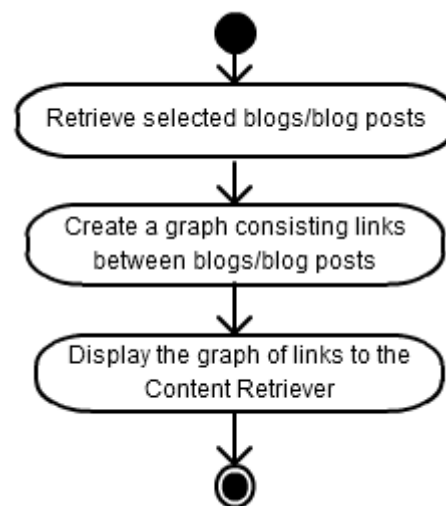
Note: “Use Case (EI) 2.1: Retrieve Data in Specified Format” can apply here

## **EI6 - Export links between blog content**

<b>Requirement category</b>	External Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The BlogForever platform should be able to provide users with a graph of links between blogs & blog posts archived in the system. The format of this graph is not restricted.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Interviewee says: I think it would be great to have on demand a graph of links between blogs & blog posts generated by the system. It would be very easy for me to get this and apply network algorithms, navigation, visualization, etc. I do not care about the protocol/format, anything would be fine. A simple text file with lists would be OK.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can export a graph of links between blog content.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	Vangelis Banos

## Use Case (EI) 6.1: Export Links

<b>Use Case UCEI6.1</b>		Export Links
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can export a graph of links between blog content.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed “Network View” interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. Graph of links has provided to the Content Retriever.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects blogs/blog posts to export links between them.</li> <li>2. The Platform creates a graph of links between related blogs/blog posts.</li> <li>3. The Platform provides this graph to the Content Retriever.</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 80: Activity Diagram for exporting links between blog content**



## 4.4 (End-)User Interface Requirements& Usability

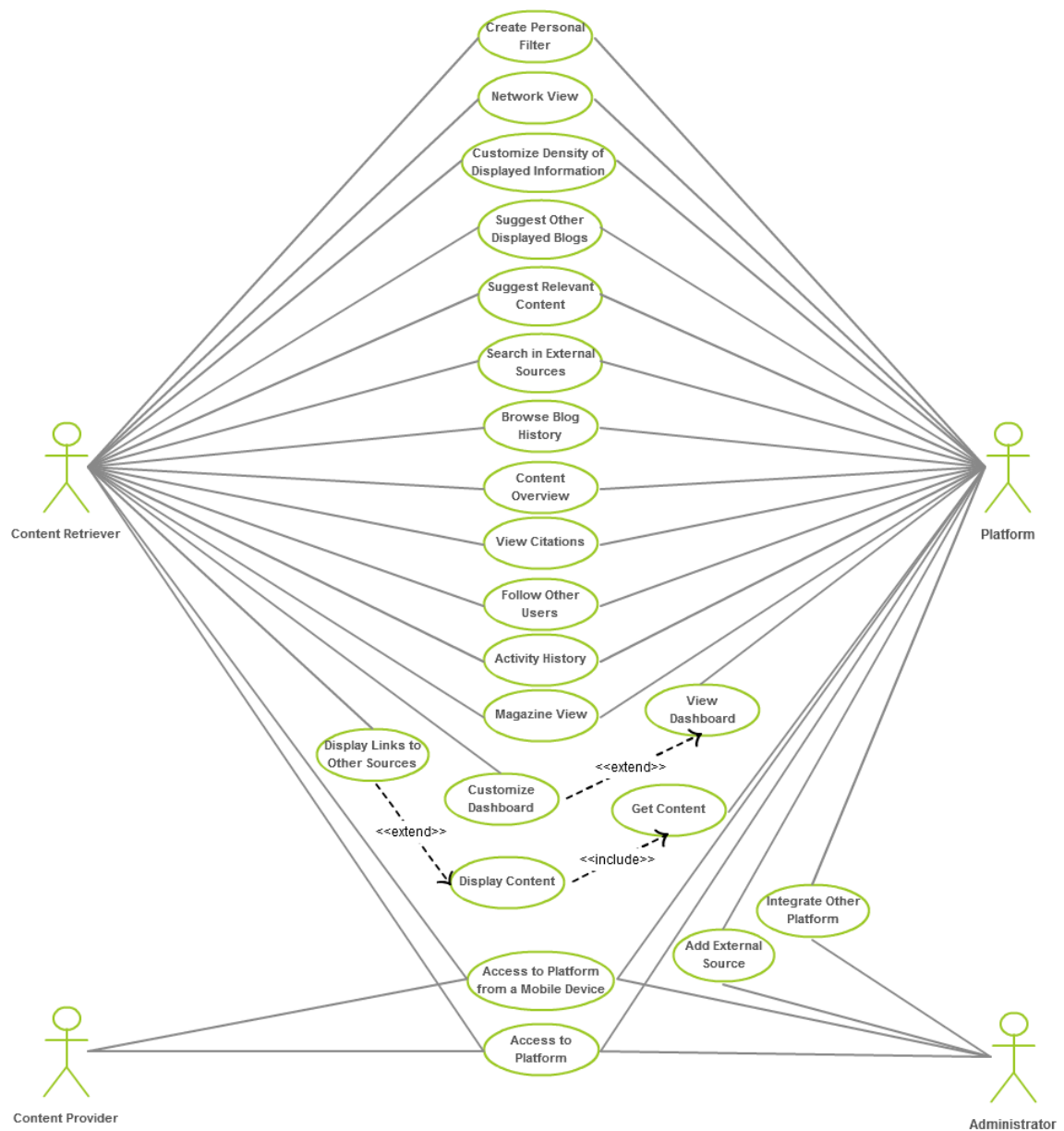
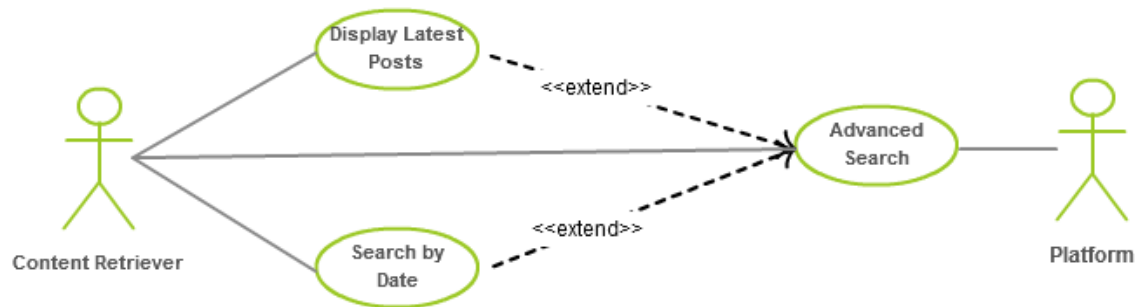


Figure 81: Use Case Diagram 1 for the (End-)User Interface Requirements



**Figure 82: Use Case Diagram 2 for the (End)-User Interface Requirements**

The following requirements are also user interface requirements but have already been defined above. Therefore, they are presented here but are not described again:

- FR5 – Descriptive statistics for a single blog or blog post
- FR6 – Processing of Licenses
- FR7 – User dissemination channels for blog post
- FR8 – Topics (Categories) for blogs and blog posts
- FR13 – Keyword/Metadata search
- FR16 – Search by author
- FR20 – List of favorite blogs and topics
- DR1 – Rights and Licenses
- DR4 – Display the author of the blog, blog post, comment

## UI1 – Web Interface

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b>  ( ) <b>Recommended</b>  ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Users and administrators of the archive want to use the archive via web interface. The web interface should run in the most common browsers (Internet Explorer, Firefox, etc.) on the most common operating systems (Windows, Mac OS, Linux).
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Organisation
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin Organisation: “It is mostly driven through a web interface; very occasionally someone will go and do something directly at the database level.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A web interface is provided for users and admins.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hendrik Kalb</li></ul>

## Use Case UCUI(UI) 1.1: Access to Platform

<b>Use Case UCUI1.1</b>		Access to Platform
<b>Description</b>		Users and administrators can access the archive via web interface
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever, Content Provider, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. User have Internet access
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. User has accessed the Platform
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The user (CR, CP or Admin) enters the URL of the Platform in a web browser</li> <li>2. The user accesses to the Platform</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Users provide the Platform's URL
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

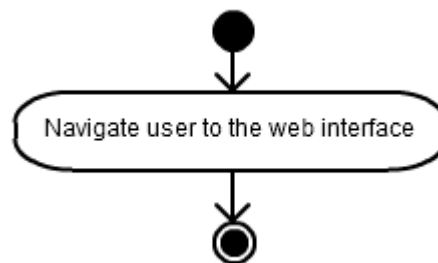


Figure 83: Activity Diagram for accessing to the Platform

## UI2 – Magazine/Journal view

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive should provide a view that aggregates various current blog posts in way like magazines or journals do. This view can be presented on the archive or can be sent out to subscribers.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author, Blog Reader
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog Author: “At the moment there are interesting tools around that people would have used to aggregate sort of like newspaper feed. I don’t know if you have seen the sort of like ‘paper’ in various aggregators that produce, like an, magazine digest. I have noticed a few of my blog posts and Twitter posts (if you count Twitter as a blog in that refined area), they get picked up by these. And it is quite interesting to see how you then end up with your post being put alongside with other people’s different posts. That is quite a visual way of doing, and then producing these magazine digest pages. So you end up with a set of boxes on that side saying: “this is certain people’s blogs” and you get yourself a place alongside other people’s postings.”</p> <p>Blog Author: “It is just put together lots of blog post feeds and just produce a publication that then get circulated in a magazine style.”</p> <p>Blog Author: “I think that is quite interesting potential to where that could go. Especially if you are thinking about an archive as well - an archive magazine!”</p> <p>Blog Reader: “Digests are quite useful in some of the work I am doing, rather than getting an individual notifications having a digest on say a weekly basis, if it is going to be an email update.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Magazine or journal like view is provided.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>
Note: “Use Case UCFR 12.1: Subscribe to Content” can apply here	
Note: “Use Case UCFR 12.2: Notify by Email” can apply here	

## Use Case UCUI(UI) 2.1: Magazine View

<b>Use Case UCUI2.1</b>		Magazine View
<b>Description</b>		The Platform provides a view that aggregates various current blog posts in way like magazines do
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has provided a number of blogs in a magazine like page
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Magazine View” button/link/tab</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves a list of popular/top rated blog posts</li> <li>3. The Platform constructs the magazine like page with the retrieved list of popular/top rated blog posts</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the magazine like page</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link/tab
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

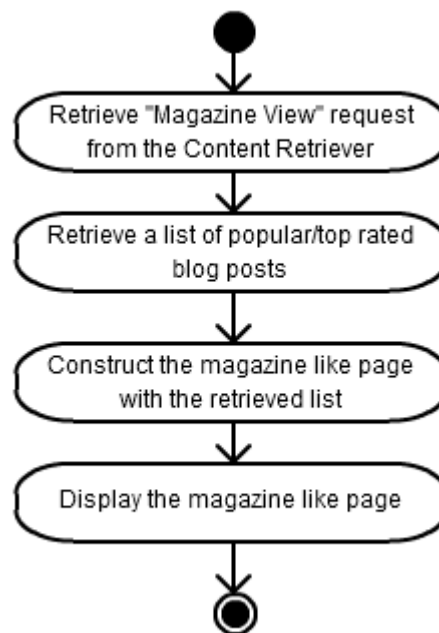


Figure 84: Activity Diagram for magazine view

## UI3 – History of own activities in the archive

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A user should be able to search and browse which blogs he/she has annotated rated or other user activities.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: “this is how you can go back and review what you have commented”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can navigate in a history of his/her own activity.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI(UI) 3.1: Activity History

<b>Use Case UCUI3.1</b>		Activity History
<b>Description</b>		Platform users can search and browse which blogs he/she has annotated, rated or other user activities.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed his/her profile page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has displayed the user activity to the Content Retriever
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Activity History” button/link/tab</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves the Content Retrievers activity history</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the activity history to the Content Retriever</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link/tab
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

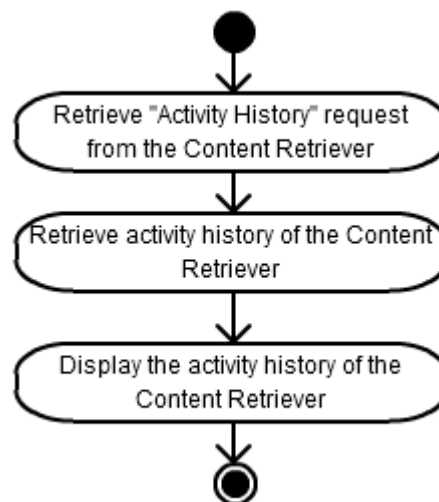


Figure 85: Activity Diagram for getting activity history



## UI4 – Subscribe and Navigate activities of other users

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>An archive user may want to see or follow the activities (e.g. annotations, highlighting, ratings, etc.) of other people (e.g. friends, colleagues, etc.). Therefore, it should be possible to subscribe and to navigate other archive users' activities.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: "this is how you did, this is how you can go back and review what you have commented on or your colleagues have commented on."
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can follow and navigate other users' activities.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI(UI) 4.1: Follow Other Users

<b>Use Case UCUI4.1</b>		Follow Other Users
<b>Description</b>		A Platform user can follow the activities (e.g. annotations, highlighting, ratings, etc.) of other people (e.g. friends, colleagues, etc.).
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed another user's profile page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has subscribed to the other user's activities
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever clicks on "Follow" button 2. The Platform adds the Content Retriever to the other user's subscription/followers list
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

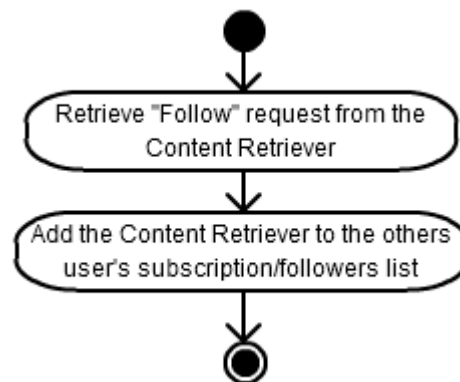


Figure 86: Activity Diagram for following other users

## UI5 – Citation is presented prominently

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A user needs to link and cite the content of the archive. Therefore, the way how to link (URI) and how to cite should be presented prominently with the content. A citation includes at least author, title, date of creation, and URI.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: “But I would want it to be cited properly. If people were going to reuse content. If it were exhibition quality that people would going to reuse it for other purposes that they could actually correctly cite it. So, I think that would be important for many of the blog users I know. But if it was going to be some useful reference elsewhere, and not just for your access for reminding you what you have posted, then correct citation would rank pretty highly.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Citation is prominently presented with the content.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI(UI) 5.1: View Citations

<b>Use Case UCUI5.1</b>		View Citations
<b>Description</b>		The users of the platform can see the citations of a blog content
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed a blog
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has displayed citations of the blog
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Citations“ tab/link</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves the citations of the blog</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the citations of the blog to the Content Retriever</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a tab/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

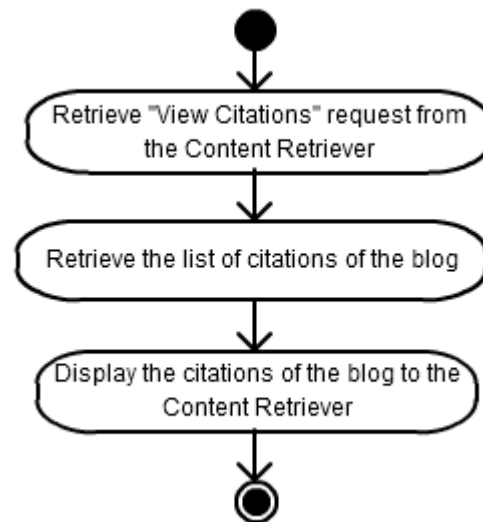


Figure 87: Activity Diagram for displaying citations of a blog

## UI6 – Latest posts

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Often, users will be interested in what is new in the archive. Therefore, latest posts should be presented or highlighted.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author, Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog Author: “you can choose which tags you want to highlight and latest posts.”</p> <p>Researcher: “I also think maybe if I are using for information-purposes then some sort of thing like access to new or most used, or some sort of statistics I think might be helpful”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Latest posts are presented to the archive user.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI(UI) 6.1: Display Latest Posts

<b>Use Case UCUI6.1</b>		Display Latest Posts
<b>Description</b>		The users of the platform can see the latest posts in the archive
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed the Advanced Search Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has displayed the latest posts in the archive
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects "Latest Posts" option from the ranking methods list</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever clicks on "Search" button.</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves the latest posts from the archive</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the latest posts to the Content Retriever</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR13.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

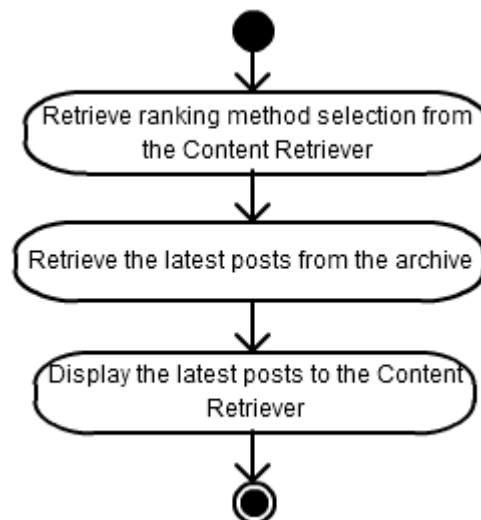


Figure 88: Activity Diagram for displaying latest posts to the Content Retriever

## UI7 – Tags for blogs and blog posts

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Often, blogs and blog posts are related with tags that describe the topic or context. Therefore, tags should be presented similar for blogs and blog posts in the archive.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author, Blog Reader, Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: “you can choose which tags you want to highlight and latest posts.” Blog Reader: “My archive in Delicious is all tagged. So, filter by tags.” Blog Author: I imagine it like an aggregator that aggregates blogs with similar topics, the user to click a specific tag and to see the related topics.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Tags are presented for blogs and blog posts.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCUI(UI) 10.1: Display Content” can apply here

## UI8 – Overview with metadata and summary

<b>Requirement category</b>	User interface
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	( ) <b>Essential</b> (X) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Archive users need a meaningful overview over blogs and blog posts to find relevant content in the archive. This overview should show at least the title, author, amount of comments, and a brief summary of the content.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Reader, Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog Reader: “But I still filter out of it quite a lot (because of time), and just look at ones that have been commented on and ones that I recognise the author of in the first place (cause that is one of the ways that I define if I think they are going to be worth reading)”</p> <p>Blog Reader: “That would be the way of ranking some blogs, by the number of comments as opposed to just quality of the original posts.”</p> <p>Researcher: “it would be interesting to have meta-data like attributes of the author, number of posts or frequency of posts, things like that. That's what I mean with meta-data and this is something I might like to analyze in an outside program - to see how many posts in average were done and in what frequency and which authors post what - that's sort of thing.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Overview with title, author, amount of comments, and brief summary is available for blogs and blog posts.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>



## Use Case UCUI(UI) 8.1: Content Overview

<b>Use Case UCUI8.1</b>		Content Overview
<b>Description</b>		Archive users can see a overview of blogs and blog posts to find relevant content in the archive
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. Content Retriever has displayed a blog/blog post
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has displayed the overview of the blog/blog post
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on a “Overview“ button/link/tab</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves the metadata (title, author, summary, etc.) of the blog/blog post</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the overview of the blog</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on button/link/tab
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

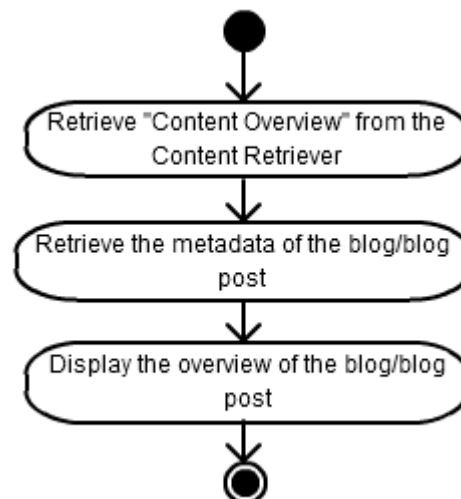


Figure 89: Activity Diagram for content overview

## UI9 - Network view for topics, blogs, posts, authors, etc.

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>( ) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>(X) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>A view on the relations among topics, blogs, posts, authors, etc. will enhance the possibility for users to explore the archived part of the blogosphere. Contrary to the view on single blogs or posts, it emphasizes the interconnections. The relations can be deduced e.g. from links between blogs.</p> <p>A visualization of author hierarchies and relations should be available to the end-user (including who mentions whom, etc.)</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Reader, Researcher, Blog Author, Content Providers and (Higher Education) Blog Users
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Blog Reader: "They have done some work on linking various topics and producing a diagrammatic form of where different topics inter-relate and it produced a very interesting visual chart. So you had the possible interconnections between different subjects, but it produced a visualisation of it. Where you get more complex and what it is you are looking for... I quite liked the way that gives you a visualisation as to how different topics could link together. So, you might not necessarily link the two in your head but the tool is helping you to sort of realise that there might be a different stage as to get from one subject area to another."</p> <p>Blog Reader: "As I said, I was quite excited by this visualisation tool that I saw earlier this year, because it seem to capture those people who aren't very good at looking at lists and picking things out. That's the group of people who would prefer to see things graphically presented."</p> <p>Researcher: "Blogs are connected into networks through the blog-rolls so if there was a tool which could also compile the connected blogs that would help identifying relevant blogs because connected blogs usually blog about the same subject or in case of science they are professionally connected, so that would have been very helpful."</p> <p>Researcher: "And since we are talking about networks, I guess it been able to export or create network-views of blogs would also be interesting for research. Blogs which are connected through links in a network-view or directed graph-view."</p> <p>Content Providers and (Higher Education) Blog Users:</p> <p>How interested are you in possible interconnections between your blog and others? In what way? How would you imagine a system supporting this feature?</p> <p>Very interested. The blog author explained the best of the blogs for history in Higher Education example as an example of</p>

	<p>interconnected blogs that they want to develop. They are very interested in external content alongside the Research Institute content. This will be very important for them. They will use some kind of aggregator that they would develop themselves if funding available.</p> <p>Showcasing the best of blogs (interesting and subjective).</p> <p>If there was an aggregator service (not just a list of feeds) they will definitely use it.</p> <p>For example best of monthly listings with nominations. Other institutions are using this but the Research Institute are not using this tool at the moment although they are very interested in this side of blogging interconnections.</p> <p>Graphical representation of all of the blogs together alongside each other. This overall view will be useful for the Research Institute with charts...but at the moment they have different platforms.</p> <p>Blog Author: "When you are talking about the inter-connections between the blogs, it is hard to describe how visually it should be represented, although, I have my own ideas on that, but it should be represented visually as a function of contribution and a function of time."</p> <p>Interview #1 ~7:40: "Trust is very important. For example in twitter, if you follow someone that you like and consider influential, you can see who they follow...There could be some hierarchies of trust...If an author mentions another author, that's the trust link for me..."</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	<p>Network views for topics, blogs, blog posts and authors are available.</p> <p>A user can view the original connections/aggregations of the blog selected. As well as that, users can interconnect blogs within a field within the archive in a simple and fast way.</p>
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> <li>• Jaime García</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI(UI) 9.1: Network View

<b>Use Case UCUI9.1</b>		Network View
<b>Description</b>		Blogs, blog posts, topics, authors in the archive can be explored with network view which provides the users to analyze the interconnections among them
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has clicked on “Network View” button/link/tab
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform displays the interconnections among blogs, blog posts, topics or authors in a network view
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects one of the network view types (blogs, blog post, topic or author)</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves a list of all the items of the selected network view type (blogs, blog posts, topics, authors) from the archive</li> <li>3. The Platform constructs a page showing the interconnections between the items</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the page to the Content Retriever</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link/tab
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

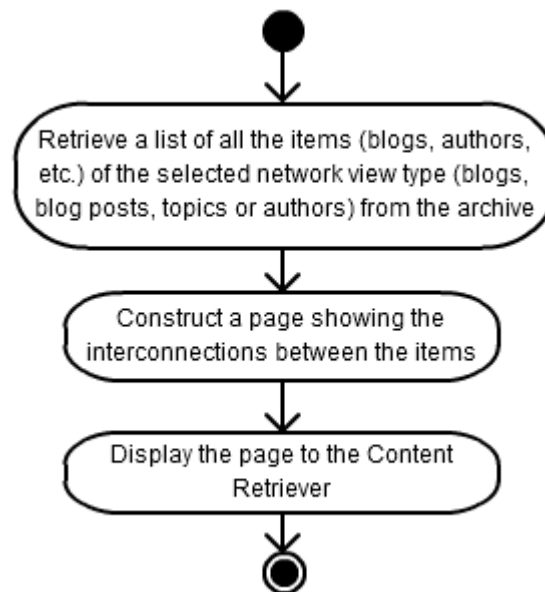


Figure 90: Activity Diagram for network view

## UI10 – Available services depend on the content rights

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement, Security Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Digital content could be available with different rights, e.g. if the user is allowed to print and to download. The user interface should support these rights by enabling/disabling the allowed services/functionalities.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retriever Library
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Library: Nowadays, it is state of the art that a library user can access everything in the library but the owner of rights can restrict the access to just reading or printing as well. Normally, downloading is not allowed.</p> <p>Library: Some authors put legal restrictions to the content they publish in our repositories. For instance a student can restrict public access to his thesis for a period of time (max 3 years). Some paperwork is required to do this. Another example, a Master thesis included military data which was confidential and should not be published, only kept in the repository.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The user interface enables/disables access functionalities depending on the content rights.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI(UI) 10.1: Display Content

<b>Use Case UCUI10.1</b>		Display Content
<b>Description</b>		The Platform enables/disables services/functionalities depending on the content rights of the users.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, The Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has sent a request to the Platform to display a blog/blog post
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. Content is displayed with its enabled/disabled functionalities on it.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform checks if the Content Retriever is authorized to access blog content</li> <li>2. If authorized, the Platform retrieves all the blog content (blog itself, tags, comments and their sources, copyright, disclaimer, author, annotations, snapshots, etc.)</li> <li>3. The Platform checks the Content Retriever's rights and constructs a page according to the them by enabling/disabling services/functionalities</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the page to the Content Retriever</li> <li>5. The Platform logs the Content Retriever information so that it can be tracked later</li> <li>6. Otherwise, The Platform displays an "access not authorized" message</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCDR1.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever sends a request to the Platform to display a blog/blog post
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

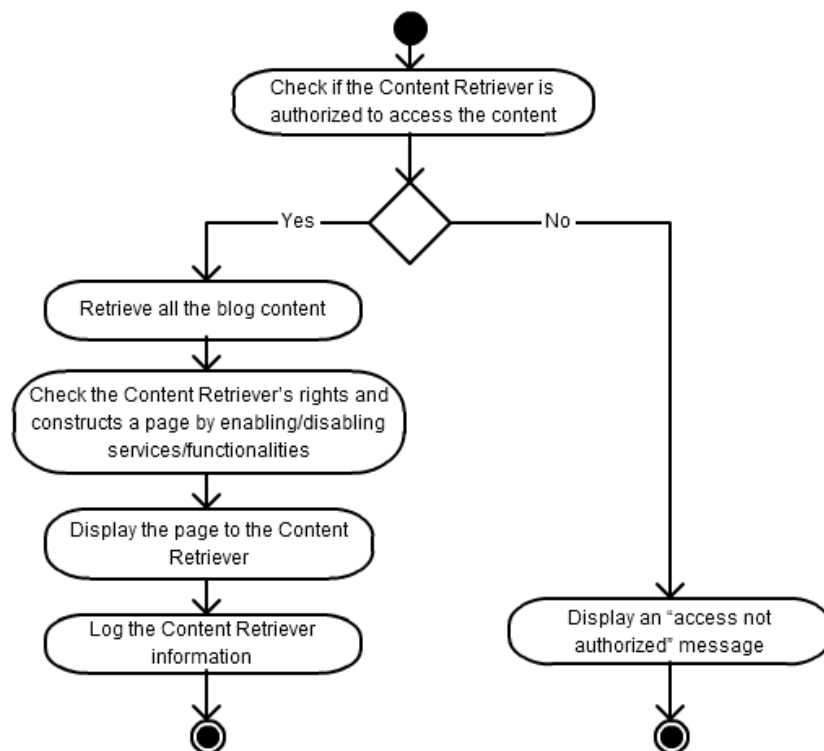


Figure 91: Activity diagram for displaying content

## UI11 – Historical/Chronological view on a blog

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>(X) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>The user can view the blog at a particular date. One option would be to navigate the blog on a time line.</p> <p>The user should be able to select a topic and view records (blog posts, comments, and blogs) associated with it, displayed in a chronological order. The user should be able to see what was published / discussed in the monitored blogs on a specific topic during selected time periods. The user interface should enable easy date-time period selection and browsing.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retriever Library, Researcher, Blog Reader, Content providers and blog archive users (content retrievers), Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Library: A blog is archived with the date when the blog have been captured. Now, you can go to a particular date and see how the blog looked at this particular day and time. Like for a newspaper.</p> <p>Researcher: I would like to see how research/discussions on a topic have progressed during time.</p> <p>Blog Reader: I would like something like Google's search preferences that allow me to read topics that occur now or topics that created the last 24 hours or the last week. This is a typical way for me to choose and to know how fresh are the news.</p> <p>Content providers and blog archive users (content retrievers):</p> <p>If there was a real time, continuous and viewable archive of your blog, how would you use it? The answer to this question was:</p> <p>Look like a snapshot with a timeline approach, date will be a trigger. The snapshot will be created every time a new post goes live.</p> <p>If we are dealing with a very slow moving blog maybe once a week but if the level of material is high or changes often it would not be easy that way.</p> <p>1.- Change of content</p> <p>2.- Change of platform looks</p> <p>What would it look like? The answer for this second question is:</p> <p>They will use to provide information about the History of the Web. Changes of design, new features, how the platforms change.</p> <p>Content Provider Organisation:</p> <p>If there was a real time, continuous and viewable archive of your blog, how would you use it? What would it look like?</p> <p>She doesn't know, but snapshots with time available maybe.</p> <p>Blog Author: "So, I think there should be a time axis."</p> <p>Blog Author: "The Wayback Machine was really good for that, and it saved</p>

---

	me a bunch of times. And what I really liked about it is - I didn't need to do anything. The problem with the Wayback Machine is that it wasn't complete. It would capture snapshots, but on a dynamic site like mine snapshots are hit and miss."
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	<p>The appearance of a blog (content, layout, etc.) can be viewed for any particular date.</p> <p>The indexing of the system will support date/time searching. The user interface will expose this functionality to users.</p>
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hendrik Kalb</li><li>• Vangelis Banos</li><li>• Stella Kopidaki</li><li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li></ul>

---



## Use Case UCUI 11.1: Search by Date

<b>Use Case UCUI11.1</b>		Search by Date
<b>Description</b>		The results of a search can be filtered and/or sorted by date
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views the Advanced Search Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform retrieves the search result and displays to the Content Retriever
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search information through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever picks a start and an end date</li> <li>3. The Platform executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>4. The Platform retrieves the search results (blogs and their usage statistics) which are in the specified date range</li> <li>5. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR13.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the keywords and presses a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

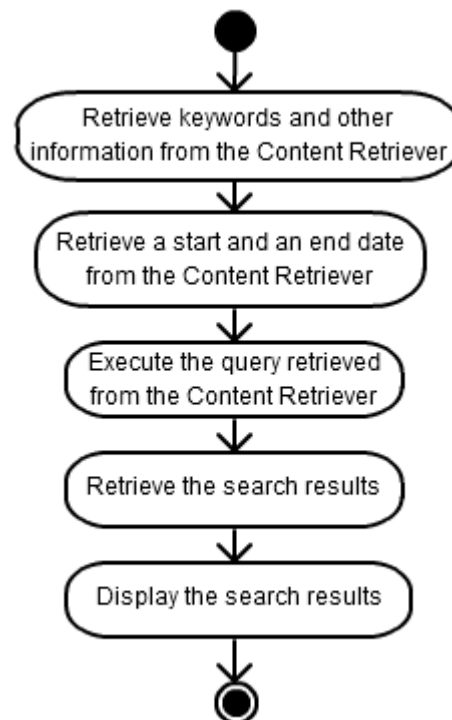


Figure 92: Activity Diagram for searching by date

## Use Case UCUI 11.2: Browse Blog History

<b>Use Case UCUI11.2</b>		Browse Blog History
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can view a blog at a particular date (old versions)
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed a blog
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has displayed the blog content and layout at the selected date
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retrieves picks a date from a calendar like interface</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves the blog content, layout and statistics for the selected date</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the blog content for the selected date</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a date
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

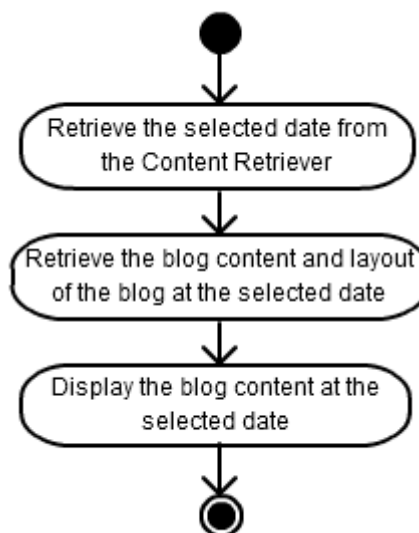


Figure 93: Activity Diagram for browsing blog history

## UI12 – Annotations and Highlighting

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A user can directly annotate and highlight archived contents. The annotations and highlighting are displayed on the content, similar as the user would have done the annotations on a paper based version. Therefore, a layer for annotations (or something similar) is needed. This layer does not affect the content in the archive resp. database but displays the content with the annotations of the user.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Researcher: “because working with the websites would be to actually be able to access the websites while they are online and put the codes in an extra layer - not sure if you are familiar with the diigo bookmarking platform - there you can add your notes and markings to websites but they are not actually added to website but they are saved in diigo as an extra layer and I think that would have been actually the solution which have been ideal so that you don't have to save the pages”</p> <p>Researcher: I use <a href="http://www.mendeley.com/">http://www.mendeley.com/</a> and I like it very much! [...] I can highlight a part of a document and save this as a note.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Annotations and highlighting it possible directly on the content.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCDR 10.1: Save User Annotations” can apply here

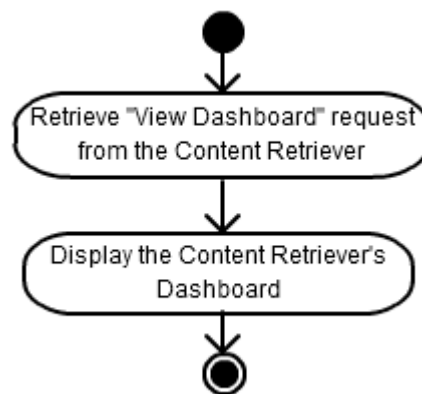
Note: “Use Case UCUI(UI) 10.1: Display Content” can apply here

## UI13 – Customizable user dashboard

<b>Requirement category</b>	User interface requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A user can customize his/her user dashboard with the favourite services, blogs, etc.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher, Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Researcher: "I guess it could be helpful to customize the entry, the dashboard or whatever to call it - because we all have different needs I think it would be useful if I could customize it"</p> <p>Businesses: "User should be able to customise his access to information services according to his own style and preferences"</p> <p>Businesses: "online user interface when you can log in and access the data, you have monitoring views, you have dashboards"</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive provides the user a possibility to customize a user dashboard easily.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 13.1: View Dashboard

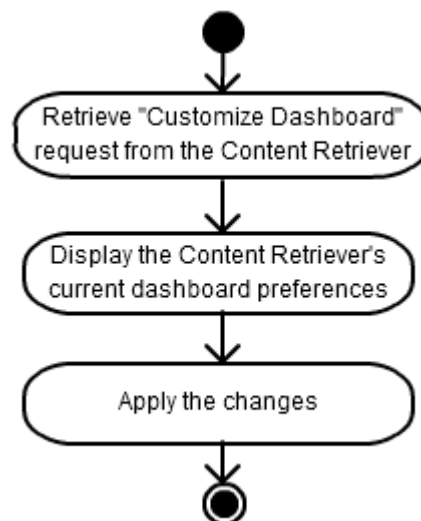
<b>Use Case UCUI13.1</b>		View Dashboard
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can display his/her dashboard
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed his/her dashboard
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retrieves clicks on “Dashboard“ tab/link 2. The Platform display the Content Retriever’s dashboard
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever a tab/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 94: Activity Diagram for displaying the users' dashboard**

## Use Case UCUI(UI) 13.2: Customize Dashboard

<b>Use Case UCUI13.2</b>		Customize Dashboard
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can customize his/her dashboard
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed his/her dashboard
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed his/her dashboard
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Customize“ button/tab/link</li> <li>2. The Platform displays the Content Retriever’s current dashboard preferences</li> <li>3. The Content Provider customizes his/her dashboard</li> <li>4. The Platform applies the changes</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCUI13.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever a button/tab/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



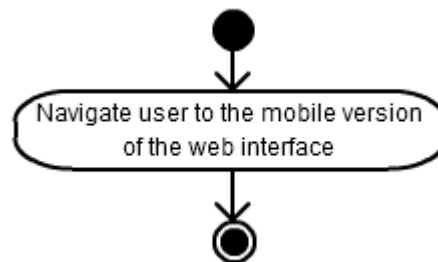
**Figure 95: Activity Diagram for customizing dashboard**

## UI14 – User interface for mobiles

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A user interface for mobiles, smartphones, and tablets has specific constraints, e.g. size of the display.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Businesses: “In addition we need to present it as apps for mobiles and iPads
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A mobile version of the user interface is available.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hendrik Kalb</li></ul>

## Use Case UCUI(UI) 14.1: Access to Platform from a Mobile Device

<b>Use Case UCUI14.1</b>		Access to Platform From a Mobile Device
<b>Description</b>		Users and administrators can access the archive via their mobile devices
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever, Content Provider, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. User have Internet access on his/her mobile device
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. User has accessed the Platform on his/her mobile device
<b>Steps</b>		1. The user (CR, CP or Admin) enters the URL of the Platform in a mobile browser 2. The user accesses to the Platform
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever provides the Platform's URL
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 96: Activity Diagram for accessing to the archive from a mobile device**



## UI15 – Search interface

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive should provide a search interface that facilitates the different search functionalities described in the functional requirements.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Researcher, Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Researcher: “would be important to me as well as access to search-possibilities” Author: The user can search for new posts via a blogs search engine.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Search interface is available for the implemented search functionalities.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 13.1: Advanced Search” can apply here

Note: “Use Case UCFR 14.1: Search” can apply here

## UI16 – Easy to learn/Intuitive

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>(X) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>The user interface has to be easy to learn and to use.</p> <p>The archive software should be easy to use by all content providers within the Institute independently of their technical background. If any extra features are available (example: dissemination cases), they have to provide an extra benefit that it is clear to use, so there are no barriers to see how the dissemination channels within the software work.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses, Content Retrievers Libraries, Blog Author, Content providers: contributors and less technical staff
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Businesses: “So any software solution should require no training from the user at all”</p> <p>Businesses: “Any software should be extremely simple for use - I’d rather say ideal for use by naive users”</p> <p>Library:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Question: What would be the important aspects that such software would have to fulfil?</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Interviewee: It should be easy to use.</p> <p>Blog Author: The information and the design of a page should help the user to find what he needs. If a page contains redundant elements, many advertisements or it is not well organised, then the user will not be able find what he needs. A page can be complicated, as a platform includes many components, but if it is structured in a way that the user can easily find them, and then the user will be able to find what he needs.</p> <p>Content providers: contributors and less technical staff:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Do you have any general comments on the development of a blog aggregation, preservation, management and dissemination software?</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Easy to use (the most important), for the less technical people, extra features need to be an extra/clear benefit.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Dissemination is hard: analysis, easy statistics, and easy to use for a multiple background team, no barriers to see how the channels of dissemination (routes) work.</p> <p>Content provider:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What are important aspects that such software has to fulfil? The answer was: Easy to use, mainly content and comments plus the look and feel of the blog but she is not too bothered about this and she thinks we need to be realistic about how far back we should look into it.</p>

	<p>What would you describe as a “killer” application feature for a blog archiving service? Easy to use and that it should provide stats and popularity, comments and tweets feeds plus 'Like' icon usages as well. Social commentary around the blog should be available within this application.</p> <p>Do you have any general comments on the development of a blog aggregation, preservation, management and dissemination software? Easy to use + social media aspect of the blog.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	<p>A normal user without previous experience with the archive can easily (e.g. without any help) process several given tasks.</p> <p>A user can adapt to the software changes independently of the users' technical knowledge.</p>
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> <li>• Senan Postaci</li> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## UI17 – Display references (links) to other sources inside or outside the archive

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Sometimes the content of a post is extracted from a trusted source, and a link to that source is included in the post. The platform should explicitly display these reference links.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retriever
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interview#2 ~8:00</p> <p>“When somebody I knew had the right information, had a very good explanation, then I put a link to his blog because I knew it was accurate information, I put links to other material, be it a blog, be it a YouTube video, explaining something that I was talking about. I’m referring to other sources...”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The user interface displays in a clear way the links used as references when showing a post.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 17.1: Display Links to Other Sources

<b>Use Case UCUI17.1</b>		Display Links to Other Sources
<b>Description</b>		The user interface displays in a clear way the links used as references when showing a post.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. TheContentRetrieverhassentarequesttothePlatformtodisplayablog/blogpost
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has explicitly displayed the links to the other sources
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform retrieves all the blog content and links/references to other sources</li> <li>2. The Platform explicitly displays the links/references to other sources in the blog post</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCUI10
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever has sent a request to the to display a blog/blogpost
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

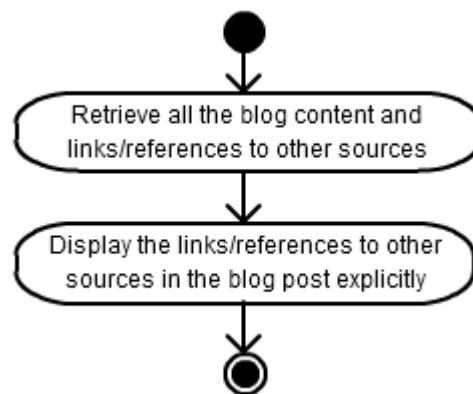


Figure 97: Activity Diagram for displaying links to other sources

## UI18- Search in external sources

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Search engine should optionally include external sources. The search results would include those external results, either in a separate tab or merged with the results found within the platform.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interview#2 ~10:10</p> <p>“If your search engine offers you to look for blogs, for forums, for news articles, then it would be interesting, because you could see only blogs or what people are commenting...”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	There is an option in the search interface that enables to include external sources in the search results.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 18.1: Search in External Sources

<b>Use Case UCUI18.1</b>		Search in External Sources
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can make a search in both archive and external sources via advanced search interface.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed the Advanced Search interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. Search results from external sources are displayed.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters keywords and other information (Boolean operators, date, sorting method, ranking, etc....)</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever selects one/more of listed external sources that s/he wants to search in.</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves the matching content from archive and external sources.</li> <li>4. The Platform categorizes the results according to their sources</li> <li>5. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever includes external sources in search.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

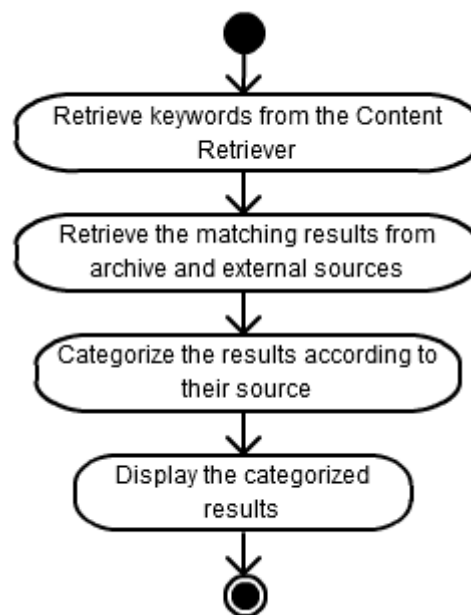
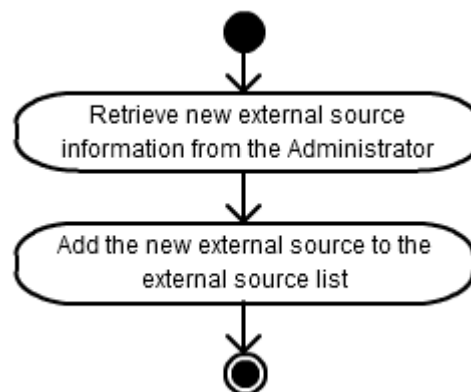


Figure 98: Activity Diagram for searching in external sources

## Use Case UCUI 18.2: Add External Source

<b>Use Case UCUI18.2</b>		Add External Source
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can add new external sources to external source list that the Platform can search in.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. New external source is added.
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Administrator opens admin interface. 2. The Administrator adds external source information that the Platform can search in.
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator clicks a button to add new external source.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 99: Activity Diagram for adding a new external source**



## UI19 – Display similar blogs and posts

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>( ) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>(X) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>When displaying a post, links to other posts on the same subject should be displayed as suggestions.</p> <p>In a blogs page exists a component with similar blogs (blogs with analogous topics).</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, Blog Author/Reader
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interview#1 ~6:48</p> <p>“It’d be great to have: Show me all the blogs on this specific subject, in a single place. I think it’d be useful...”</p> <p>Blog Author/Reader:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I would be interested when I read a blog, to show similar blogs under it that will be generated with a specific way or blogs with analogous topics or people that read this blog, read and the second and some other analogous blogs.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I would like to be able to find topics and also to have suggestions for similar topics (related items).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I want to see related blogs when I choose a blog, I don't want to search in order to discover, but the system to suggest me things that maybe will be interesting for me based on my preferences and my actions, i.e. if I see a technological blog then to suggest me 2 or 3 other technological blogs, if I see a blog that is related to technology and music then to suggest me 2 other technological and 2 other music blogs.</p> <p>Blog Reader: I want to see a list with the top-5 or top-N blogs and to have information about the category they belong to. And after I want to see blogs related to the blog I have chosen, I don't want to search in order to discover, but the system to suggest me things that maybe will be interesting for me based on my preferences and my actions, i.e. if I see a technological blog then to suggest me 2 or 3 other technological blogs, if I see a blog that is related to technology and music then to suggest me 2 other technological and 2 other music blogs.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Suggestions of similar blogs and posts are showed when displaying a blog or post.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García</li> </ul>

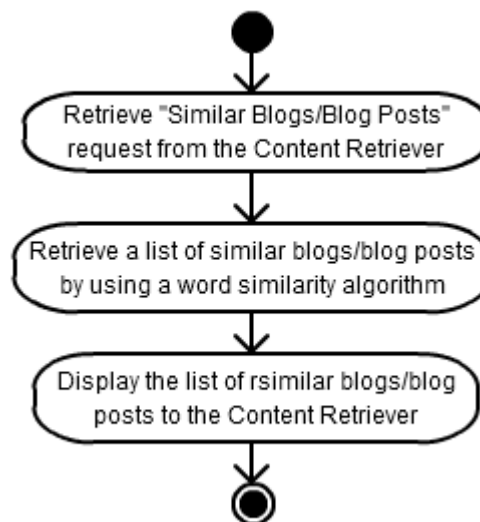
---

<b>description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li><li>• Stella Kopidaki</li></ul>
--------------------	--

---

## Use Case UCUI 19.1: Suggest Relevant Content

<b>Use Case UCUI19.1</b>		Suggest Relevant Content
<b>Description</b>		Platform suggests posts/blogs relevant to the post/blog that the Content Retriever currently displays.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed a blog content
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has suggested relevant content.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Similar Blogs/Blog Posts” button/link</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves a list of relevant blogs/blog posts by using a word similarity algorithm based upon the tagging information of the original blog/blog post</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the list of relevant blogs/blog posts</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



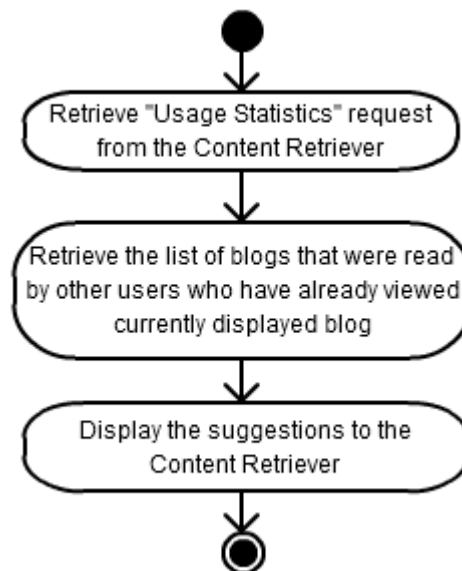
**Figure 100: Activity Diagram for suggesting relevant content**

## UI20 – Display blogs that were read by people who have read a specific blog

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	To have a component like Amazon that will inform the user that people who read this blog, also read blog X and blog Y.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Provider – Blog Authors.
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Phrases from the interview <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To show people that read this blog, and the second blog and third, read my blog and someone else's, like Amazon cross-referencing sales, so as to group blogs.</li> </ul>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	For a displayed blog, blogs are shown that were read by people who have read the displayed blog.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 20.1: Suggest Other Displayed Blogs

<b>Use Case UCUI20.1</b>		Suggest Other Displayed Blogs
<b>Description</b>		The Platform provides a list of blogs which were read by people who have read displayed blog
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever displays a blog
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform suggests blogs that were read by readers of displayed blog
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Usage Statistics” tab/link</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves the list of blogs that were read by other users who have already viewed currently displayed blog</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the suggestions</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a tab/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 101: Activity Diagram for suggesting other displayed blogs**

## UI21 – Archived content is clearly stated as such

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	In order to avoid confusion and misunderstandings, it has to be clear to the end user that the content is an archived copy and not the original.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interview#1 ~21:05</p> <p>“This potentially raises the question where the original content comes from, are they aware that this is an archive, an aggregator...it needs to be clear to the user that this is what it is...”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The user interface states in a clear way that the content available is an archive of the original source.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## UI23 – Categories/Topics are shown in different tabs

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Use different tabs or links to show the different categories.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Provider – Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Phrases from the interview <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use of external links according to categories or different tabs that link to various categories based on the user interests can help the user to find what he wants.</li> </ul>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Different categories/topics are shown in different tabs or links.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 13.1: Advanced Search” can apply here

## UI24 – Display with only core information

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>like Instapaper: to see only the information itself</p> <p>Instapaper saves a clear text to the users account since the text parser transforms web pages into unstyled text versions suitable for mobile devices and e-book readers.</p> <p>Important information refers to the text, image or video that an article can contain. The user wants only the important information to be presented in a simple way with no redundant elements.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers - Blog Readers.
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Phrases from the interview</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do something like what Instapaper does, i.e. to extract only the information that is important, only the text, the image and the video, like reader of iOS Safari does now, and to aggregate all these information. So I will not see advertisements or anything else than the clear information.</li> </ul>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can see a blog post free of redundant elements like advertisements, so only the text and images/videos of it will be displayed.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCUI 22.1: Customize Density of Displayed Information” can apply here



## UI25 – Filtered, personalized aggregation of content for end-users

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Users should be able to configure a personalized filter for the content they view in the platform, including old and new content.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interview#1~7:20</p> <p>“I would like to see really specific topics and features that I can control. Otherwise it becomes too noisy, too messy...”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can configure a filter to display his personal aggregation of blogs or posts.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 25.1: Create Personal Filter

<b>Use Case UCUI25.1</b>		Create Personal Filter
<b>Description</b>		Users can configure a filter to display his personal aggregation of blogs or posts
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has displayed his/her profile page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has created a personal filter for the Content Retriever
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever defines a filter that specifies what kind of content filtered 2. The Content Retriever saves the changes
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator clicks link/button to start integration.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

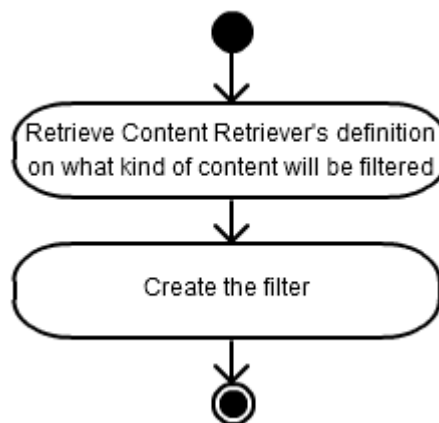


Figure 102: Activity Diagram for creating personalized filters

## UI26 – Historical/Chronological view on blogs combined with corresponding statistics

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	( ) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> (X) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive user will have snapshot data of changes of an archived blog in chronological order. These different versions of the archived blog will have specific analytical data attached to them to preserve the stats as well as the content, look and feel of the blog.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content providers and content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Phrases from the interview:</p> <p>What are important aspects that such software has to fulfill?</p> <p>Design and changes plus comments and content with links and its corresponding analytics</p> <p>Stats disappear after a while in WordPress so more stable statistics will be very beneficial.</p> <p>What would you describe as a “killer” application feature for a blog archiving service?</p> <p>Image of the actual blog over time plus the analytics all on one screen: blog post per month... Viewable over time and for specific periods of time. Same screen for image of the blog (the look and feel) at the time and the analytics attached at that point, as much as possible and able to switch off the extra elements if needed.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can find the statistics attached to different versions of a blog.
<b>Author</b>	Silvia Arango-Docio

Note: “Use Case UCUI 11.2: Browse Blog History” can apply here

## UI27 – Dynamic network view on topics, blogs, posts, etc.

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A view on the relations among topics, blogs, posts, authors, etc. will enhance the possibility for users to explore the archived part of the blogosphere. Contrary to the view on single blogs or posts, it emphasizes the interconnections. The connections among blogs are often directed and change over time. Therefore, exploration will be further improved by a dynamic network view that displays the changes in the represented part of the blogosphere.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: “When you are talking about the inter-connections between the blogs, it is hard to describe how visually it should be represented, although, I have my own ideas on that, but it should be represented visually as a function of contribution and a function of time. So, I think there should be a time axis. Typical representations of the linkages between blogs are never indexed to time. It is always this network and a network guy who says: “here’s a blog, here’s blog, and there is a line between them”. But in real world, the relationships between blogs aren’t like that. They are not static. It is not a one-time thing such as: “here is a network - forever and a day”. It is very fluid, very dynamic. So, having a way of representing that would be important.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Blogs and blog posts in the archive can be explored with a dynamic network view.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCUI 9.1: Network View” can apply here

## UI28 – Integration/Combination with other systems

<b>Requirement category</b>	User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<p>( ) <b>Essential</b></p> <p>( ) <b>Recommended</b></p> <p>(X) <b>Optional</b></p>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	For people who analyse the data in relation to other data in a company, it would be beneficial to have an integrated or combined view on several systems (e.g. business intelligence, customer relationship management, etc.) instead of using each system separately.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Businesses: “in the future I see the combining the data that we provide with web analytics data and perhaps even business intelligence data on a higher level but there is a need to combine different data sources and whether you do it locally so that you have your customer feedback function that combines customer feedback from different sources or if you have a performance data that combines for example sales and social media activity that’s another story but the thing is that the data should be aggregated so that there is more data in one place so that companies’ clients can make better decisions on it”</p> <p>Businesses: “so that instead that they have web analytics data in one place and marketing campaign data on activity clicks and displays, they have that in one place, and social media activity data in one place, they would have a common dashboard that would show all the three different data set and sales of course is the fourth”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The user interface of the archive can easily integrated in other user interfaces or the user interface of the archive can easily integrate user interfaces of other systems.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 28.1: Integrate Other Platform

<b>Use Case UCUI28.1</b>		Integrate Other Platform
<b>Description</b>		The Platform can easily be integrated in other platforms
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has been integrated in another platform
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator enters the url of the other platform.</li> <li>2. The Platform integrates itself with the other platform so that the data from the other platform can be retrieved within the Platform</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator clicks link/button to start integration.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

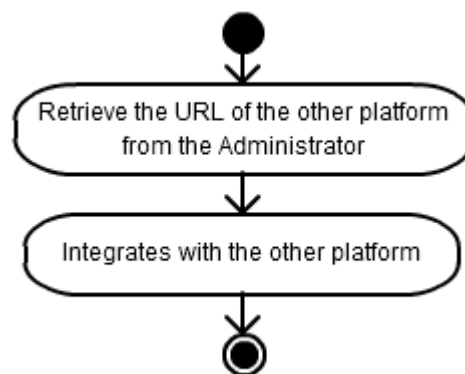


Figure 103: Activity Diagram for integration with other platforms

#### 4.4.1 Ease of Use / Ease of Learning Requirements

### UI22 –Density of displayed information

<b>Requirement category</b>	(End-)User Interface Requirements & Usability > Ease Of Use / Ease Of Learning Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The user is able to define the density of information e.g. if only text or images or video will appear
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers - Blog Readers.
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Phrases from the interview</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I want to be able to define how dense the content will be, e.g. if I want to see many photographs or not, if I want to see many videos related with the specific topic. But every time I will choose what to see based on my free time.</li> <li>If I don't have time I want to see the titles and a part of the text, if I can spend more time then to see photos and video, if exist, for each post.</li> </ul>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The user can adjust the density of the displayed information.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stella Kopidaki</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 22.1: Customize Density of Displayed Information

<b>Use Case UCUI22.1</b>		Customize Density of Displayed Information
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can customize the density of displayed content (e.g. only videos or texts will be displayed).
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The changes that the Content Retriever made are saved by the Platform.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever displays his/her profile settings.</li> <li>2. The Platform displays the Content Retriever's current preferences.</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever selects/changes the content types (video, text, image...) that s/he wants to see.</li> <li>4. The Platform saves and applies the changes</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button to save the changes
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

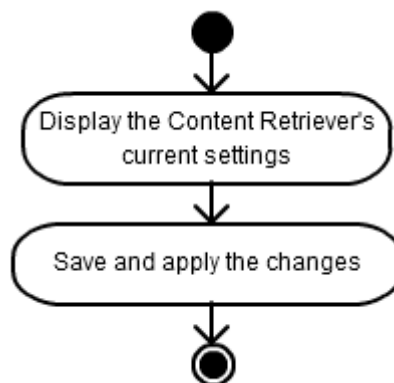


Figure 104: Activity Diagram for customizing density of displayed information



## 4.5 Performance Requirements

The performance requirements are further distinguished in speed/performance requirements, capacity and scalability requirements, and reliability and availability requirements.

### 4.5.1 Speed / Performance Requirements

This describes the required dynamic aspects, e.g. maximum amount of time for the response on a user request.

#### PR1 – Amount of blog posts to capture

<b>Requirement category</b>	Performance Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive resp. the spider must be able to capture 500.000 to 1.000.000 blog posts per day. The number varies depending on the organization that will use the archive and the purpose of their archiving activities.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses, Admin Organisation
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Business: “the daily volumes are actually somewhere around, they might be even millions, or 1 point something millions per day blogs [blog posts], so the monthly numbers would probably be millions instead of hundreds of thousands” Business: “I think we are doing five hundred thousand a day, and that’s posts.” Admin: “ Business: “About 150,000 per day as input. However most of this is spam - so 25-30,000 is relevant.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive resp. the spider can capture up to 1.000.000 blog posts per day.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## PR2 – Storage data concurrently

<b>Requirement category</b>	Performance Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Real time capturing can produce a lot of data in peak times. Therefore, it should be possible to store data concurrently in the archive.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Business
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Business: “And then we need to be able to have the data logistics as smooth as possible because the data is being queried real time, it’s not like a query run that’s done during the night or anything but it’s a real time query interface, so we need to concurrently store more data every second and be able every second to respond to queries; that at least creates challenges technically” Business: “Frequency from every 5th minutes to a couple of times per day”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive can store data concurrently.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## 4.5.2 Capacity and Scalability Requirements

### CS1 – Amount of archived blogs

<b>Requirement category</b>	Capacity and Scalability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The platform has to be scalable in terms of the amount of archived blogs. The number of blogs can vary from some thousands of blogs up to one million or more. The archive has to be scalable to higher numbers of blogs as well.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Organisation, Admin Blog Host
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Admin Organisation: (Could you please estimate and describe how many blogs you are archiving / would consider archiving?) “I do not know of the top of my head. The system was running from 2004. I would estimate that there are around thousands of blogs, but not tens of thousands of blogs.”</p> <p>Admin Blog Host: At the moment, we have almost one million of blogs. Nowadays, the number of our hosted blogs increases only slowly.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The system is scalable in terms of the amount of archived blogs.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

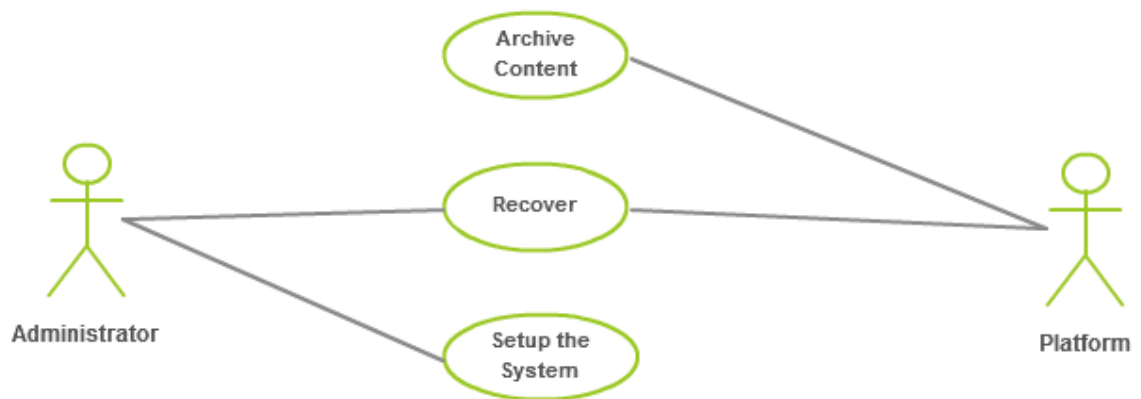
## CS2 – Amount of blog posts per day

<b>Requirement category</b>	Capacity and Scalability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive must be scalable regarding the content respective blog posts that are added daily.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Businesses, Admin Organisation
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Businesses: “the daily volumes are actually somewhere around, they might be even millions, or '1 dot something' millions per day blogs [blog posts], so the monthly numbers would probably be millions instead of hundreds of thousands.” (The answer relates to blog posts captured)</p> <p>Businesses: “I think we are doing five hundred thousand a day, and that’s posts.” (The answer relates to blog posts captured)</p> <p>Admin: “If we are talking specifically about blogs, than new blog entries are created on average at about 10 a day. It is more during the term time and fewer out of the term time. But we create at about 10 entries a day, so 70-80 entries a week.”</p> <p>Business: “About 150,000 per day as input. However most of this is spam - so 25-30,000 is relevant.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive is scalable regarding the content respective blog posts that are added daily.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## CS3 – Amount of users

<b>Requirement category</b>	Capacity and Scalability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive must be scalable in terms of archive users. Archive users can be blog authors as well as people who just read blogs or explore the archive.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Blog Host
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Host: We have currently 700.000 Users.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive is scalable in terms of archive users.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hendrik Kalb</li></ul>

### 4.5.3 Reliability and Availability Requirement



**Figure 105: Use Case Diagram for the Reliability and Availability Requirements**

## RA1 – Recovery of the system

<b>Requirement category</b>	Reliability and Availability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A productive use of the system would require a permanent availability. Therefore, it should be possible to recover the archive fast in the case of an unplanned close down of the archive.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Organisation
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin: “Blogs is fair to say a low priority service for us than our other services. So, if our main [...] website went down, and there was no page available when you went to [...] page, we would have got into a fairly serious emergency and people would start working on it immediately to get it back as quickly as possible. If blogs were similarly unavailable, we wouldn’t have any particular commitment to say it must be back within an hour, a day or a week. We would work on it and bring it back, but there is no service agreement on that particular service.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The system can be recovered in less than one hour.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCRA 1.1: Recover

<b>Use Case UCRA1.1</b>		Recover
<b>Description</b>		In case of an unplanned close down, the BlogForever Platform is able to recover the archive
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. Archive has been recovered.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform displays the list of backup history</li> <li>2. The Administrator selects one of the backup dates</li> <li>3. The Platform starts the recovery process</li> <li>4. The Platform restores the archive back to the state of the selected backup</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator starts recovery.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

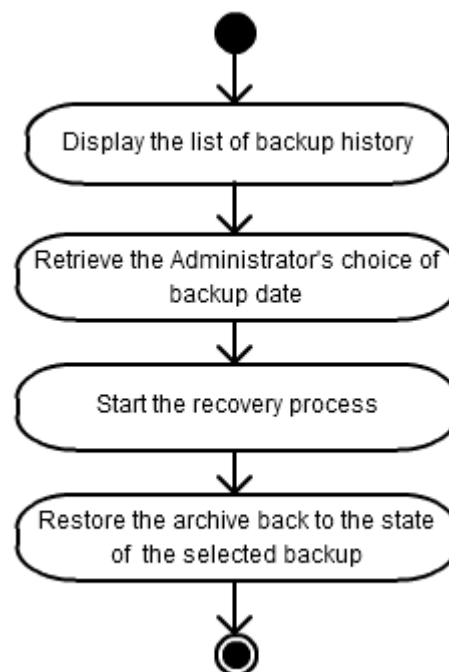


Figure 106: Activity diagram for recovery



## RA2 – Correct information in the archive

<b>Requirement category</b>	Reliability and Availability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive has to store the information correctly as they can be found in the original blog.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: “And you have to be very careful to making sure that you have got the right information in the archive”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	It has to be tested with random samples if the archive contains the information from blogs in the correct fields in the database.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

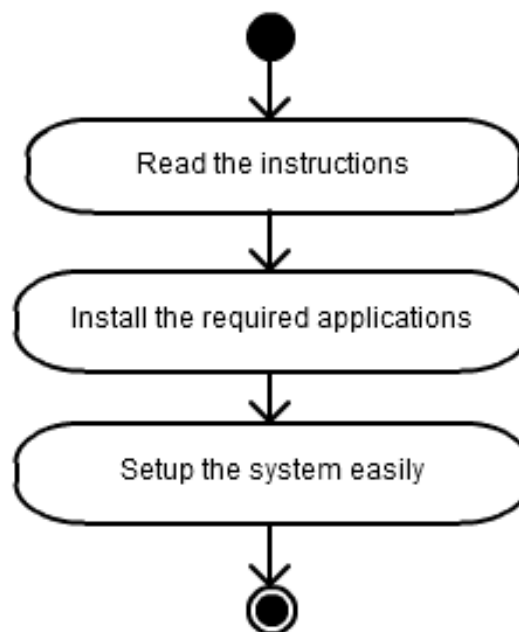
Note: “Use Case UCFR 6.1: Archive Content” can apply here

## RA3 – Application High Availability

<b>Requirement category</b>	Reliability and Availability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The BlogForever platform should support high availability architectures.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admins - Organizations
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Interviewer: Our relationship with users is a traditional one and most of the time, our services are for free (we are a public institution). As a result, we do not have SLA with them; most of our users don't know what an SLA is. We would like to have 100% availability of course despite not having SLAs.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The BlogForever Platform should be based on proven software which supports high availability architectures. (Web servers, application servers, database, and storage). There should be a clear guide to setup and use the BlogForever platform in high availability architectures.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	Vangelis Banos

## Use Case UCRA 3.1: Setup the System

<b>Use Case UCRA3.1</b>		Setup the System
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can setup the system easily with clear guides
<b>Actors</b>		Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has downloaded the source codes
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has setup the system and started to use
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator reads the instructions</li> <li>2. The Administrator installs the required applications</li> <li>3. The Administrator setups the system easily</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator starts the setup
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



Activity Diagram for building the system up

## 4.6 Operational Requirements

The operational requirements specify required capabilities of the system to ensure a stable operation of the system. They are further distinguished in supportability and maintainability requirements, and storage and persistence requirements.

### 4.6.1 Supportability and Maintainability Requirements



**Figure 107: Use Case Diagram for the Supportability and Maintainability Requirements**

## SM1 – Migration/Updating without down time

<b>Requirement category</b>	Supportability and Maintainability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	An update of the archive software should be possible without a shutdown of the archive.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Organisation
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin: “There are challenges, in particular, if you are looking to provide a very high level of continuity, for example. You want to go from the old system to the new system, but nobody wants it to be a period when there is no system at all. You have to try to look for a way to manage the migration in such a way that it is either continuous or it is possible to use the old system during the migration and then switch it to the new system immediately when it is finished.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive software can be updated without shutdown of the archive.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCSM 1.1: Update Archive Software

<b>Use Case UCSM1.1</b>		Update Archive Software
<b>Description</b>		During an update or migration to new version, to provide continuity of platform, old version of platform will be in use.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Post conditions</b>	1. The software is updated.
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Administrator integrates the new updated component 2. The Administrator activates the new component
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator activates the updated component
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

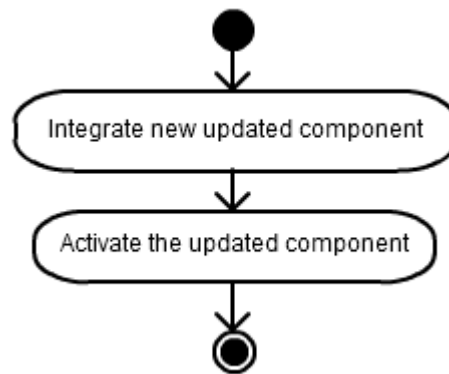


Figure 108: Activity Diagram for updating software

## SM2 – Software updates

<b>Requirement category</b>	Supportability and Maintainability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It is important for IT-departments that the software runs without bugs and security gaps. Therefore, updates of the software are necessary to close possible security gaps and to repair bugs. It has to be clear to the IT departments how (e.g. how often, how get they informed) the software will be updated.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Blog Host
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin: We regularly update the software to close security gaps, to address user requests for features, and to improve services.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	An appropriate approach how to update the software is defined.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCSM 2.1: Check Software Updates

<b>Use Case UCSM2.1</b>		Check Software Updates
<b>Description</b>		The BlogForever Platform checks for software updates
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator is logged in.
	<b>Post conditions</b>	1. The software is updated
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform checks for the software updates 2. The Platform notifies Administrator about the software update 3. The Administrator starts the update process 4. UCSM1.1
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator is logged in.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

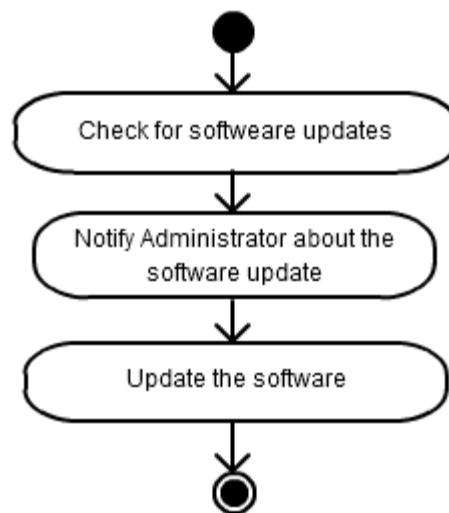


Figure 109: Activity Diagram for checking software updates



## SM3 – Data export for migration

<b>Requirement category</b>	Supportability and Maintainability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It should be possible to export all the data from the archive to avoid a lock in effect to the archive software and to facilitate migration.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Blog Host
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin: If the software will not be developed further, we cannot work with the software anymore. In this case, we have to export the data and migrate it to another system.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	All data from the archive can be exported for migration.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCSP 2.2: Manual Backup” can apply here

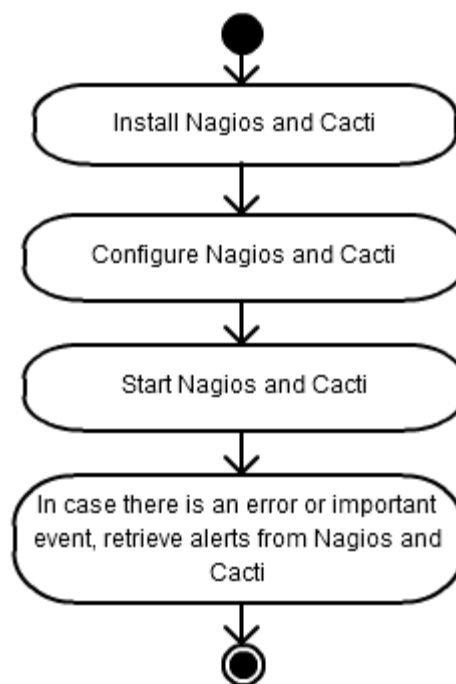
Note: “Use Case UCRA 1.1: Recover” can apply here

## SM4 – Compliance with nagios and cacti monitoring software

<b>Requirement category</b>	Supportability and Maintainability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	IT Infrastructure monitoring systems Nagios & Cacti must be compatible with the BlogForever Platform in order to enable instant awareness of problems and status.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admins - Organizations
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Interviewer: Which important functionalities do you normally use to monitor and maintain server software and services in your organization?  Interviewee says: We are using nagios ( <a href="http://www.nagios.org/">http://www.nagios.org/</a> ) and cacti ( <a href="http://www.cacti.net/">http://www.cacti.net/</a> ). Cacti is used for system performance but we also use it to measure page response time for web apps.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A Nagios system must be able to connect with the BlogForever platform and monitor performance and uptime.  A Cacti system must be able to connect with the BlogForever platform and monitor performance and uptime.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	Vangelis Banos

## Use Case UCSM 4.1: Start Nagios and Cacti

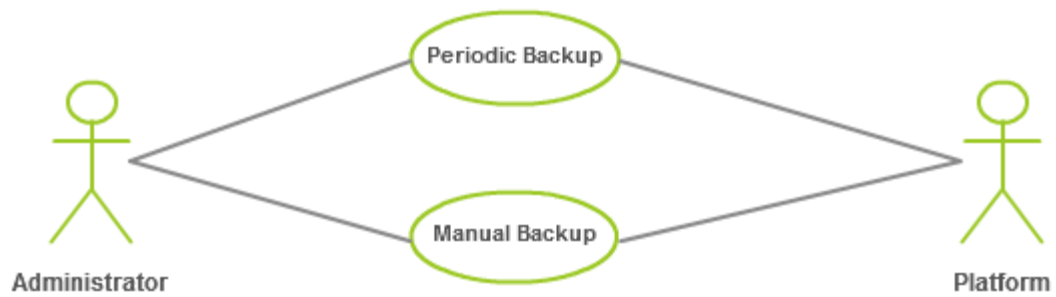
<b>Use Case UCSM4.1</b>		Configure Nagios and Cacti
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator configures Nagios and Cacti.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. Nagios and Cacti are installed.
	<b>Post conditions</b>	1. The Nagios and Cacti start monitoring.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator installs Nagios and Cacti</li> <li>2. The Administrator configures Nagios and Cacti by entering system related information (infrastructure of platform, alerting system...)</li> <li>3. The Administrator starts Nagios and Cacti</li> <li>4. If there is an error or important event, they send alert to the Administrators.</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Nagios and Cacti are installed.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 110: Activity Diagram for using Nagios and Cacti systems**

### 4.6.2 Storage and Persistence Requirements

This describes specific requirements for the storage of the data, e.g. to prevent data loss.



**Figure 111: Use Case Diagram for the Storage and Persistence Requirements**

## SP1 – Support for different SQL-data bases

<b>Requirement category</b>	Storage and Persistence Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive should support different SQL-databases to ease the administration for different institutions.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Organisation
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin: “We might care about what associated technology has come alongside. We might favour applications which use an Oracle database, rather than applications that use, say, SQL Server database.”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive supports/works on different SQL-data bases.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## SP2 – Mechanisms to avoid data loss

<b>Requirement category</b>	Storage and Persistence Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Mechanisms or methods (e.g. data redundancy) have to be implemented to avoid data loss.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Blog Host
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin: The data has to be recoverable every time. Therefore, data have to be stored redundant.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Mechanisms to avoid data loss are implemented.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCSP 2.1: Periodic Backup

<b>Use Case UCSP2.1</b>		Periodic Backup
<b>Description</b>		The BlogForever Platform can be scheduled to back up the archive
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has backed up the archive
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator schedules the Platform to back up the archive periodically</li> <li>2. The Platform checks for the backup time in certain time intervals</li> <li>3. If it is time for the backup, the Platform backs up the archive</li> <li>4. Otherwise it repeats the periodic check</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator schedules backup.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

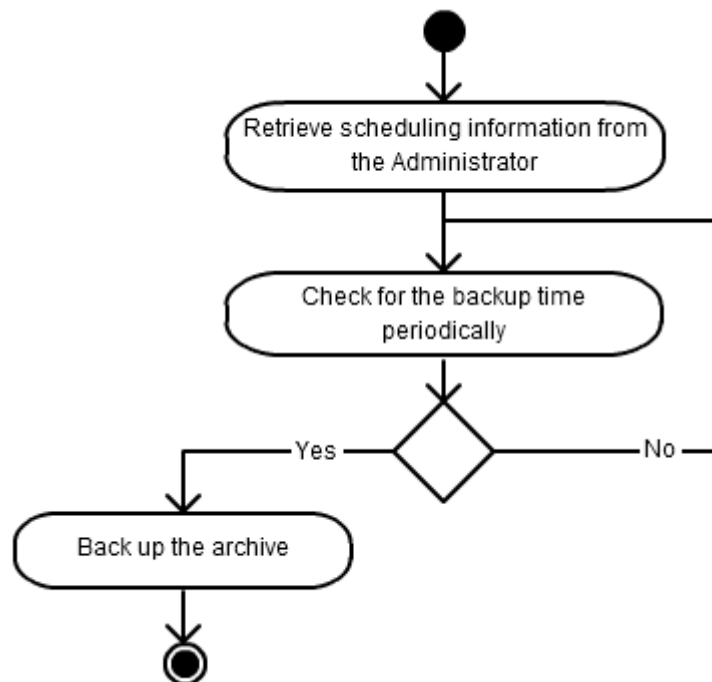


Figure 112: Activity diagram for scheduled backup

## Use Case UCSP 2.2: Manual Backup

<b>Use Case UCSP2.2</b>		Manually Backup
<b>Description</b>		The administrator can start a backup manually.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has backed up the archive
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Administrator starts the backup process 2. The Platform backs up the archive
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The administrator starts backup process
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

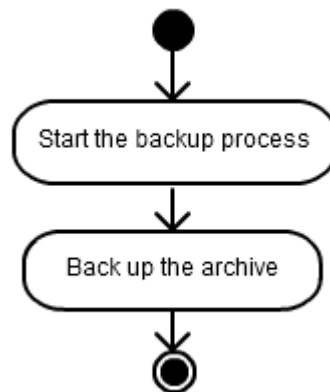
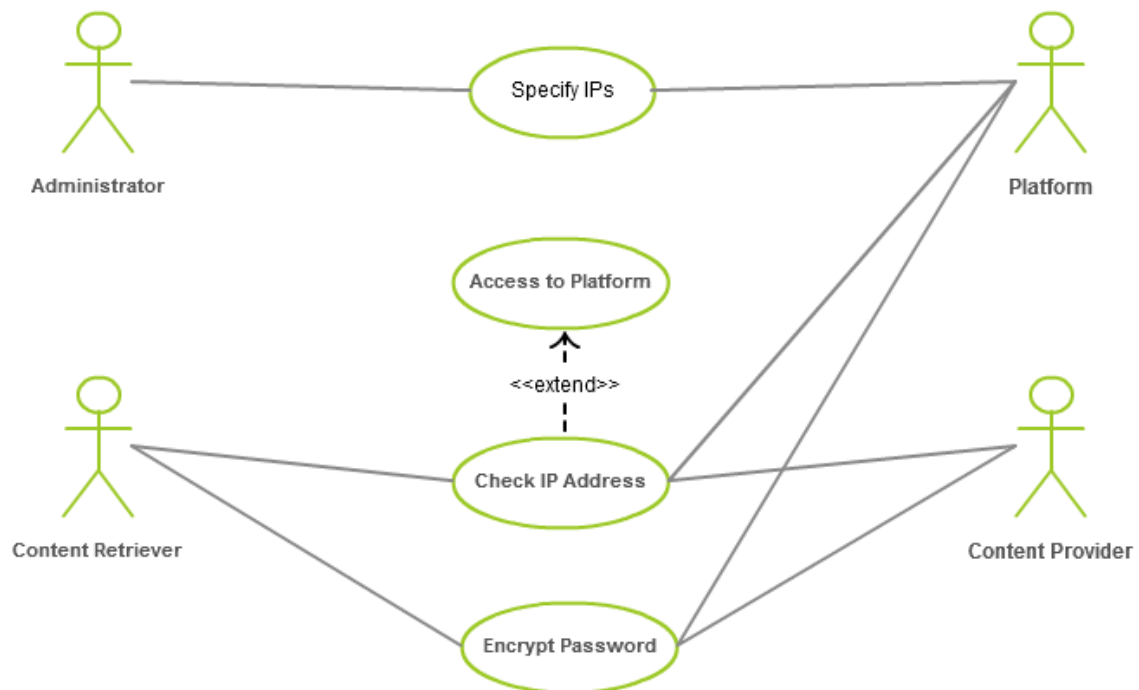


Figure 113: Activity diagram for manual backup



## 4.7 Security Requirements



**Figure 114: Use Case Diagram for the Security Requirements**

The following requirements are also security requirements but have already been defined above. Therefore, they are presented here but are not described again:

- IR4 – Expose parts of the archive via OAI-PMH based on specified criteria
- UI10 – Available services depend on the content rights

## SR1 – Passwords are stored encrypted

<b>Requirement category</b>	Security Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Password has to be stored encrypted.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Blog Host
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin: Passwords are encrypted.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Passwords are stored encrypted.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCSR 1.1: Encrypt Password

<b>Use Case UCSR1.1</b>		Encrypt Password
<b>Description</b>		The Platform encrypts users' passwords and store them encrypted
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever, Content Provider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. A new user has provided registration information
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1 The Platform has stored the encrypted password.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform retrieves the registration information from the new user</li> <li>2. The Platform encrypts the password by using an encryption algorithm</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever retrieves the registration information from the new user
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

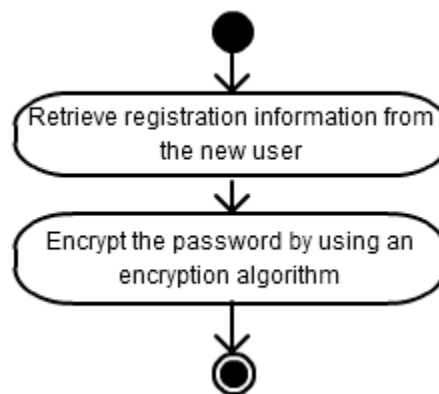


Figure 115: Activity diagram for encryption of password

## SR2 – Access restricted to IP-range

<b>Requirement category</b>	Security Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The BlogForever Platform can be accessible for specific IP addresses or an IP range and enables a security policy.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content Retrievers – Libraries, Content Providers/Retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Library: The repositories can be accessed anywhere in the METU campus. A person from outside the campus needs an account to access the repositories.</p> <p>Library: We restrict access based on IP (we provide access only to University network users)</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	<p>A security policy can be enabled for a BlogForever archive to specify certain IP addresses or an IP range, from which the archive is accessible.</p> <p>An administrator can specify a security policy and allow or deny access to the archive or a part of the archive (e.g. collection, blog) based on specific IP or IP range.</p> <p>Interview#1~3:00:          “WehaveaninternalblogandweuseauthenticationtohideitandIPrestrictions...”</p>
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Senan Postaci</li> <li>• Vangelis Banos</li> <li>• Jaime García</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCSR 2.1: Specify IPs

<b>Use Case UCSR2.1</b>		Specify IPs
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can specify IP addresses or ranges from which users can access
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has displayed the Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has specified IP addresses or ranges 2. The Platform stores the IP information
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Administrator enters IP addresses or ranges 2. The Platform stores the IP information
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator has entered IP information
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

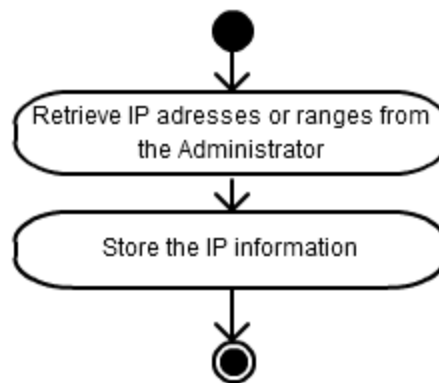


Figure 116: Activity Diagram for specifying IP addresses or ranges

## Use Case UCSR 2.2: Check IP Address

<b>Use Case UCSR2.2</b>		Check IP Address
<b>Description</b>		The BlogForever Platform can check the IP addresses of the users since it can be accessible for specific IP addresses or an IP range
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever, Content Provider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. User have Internet access
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. User has accessed the Platform or navigated to an error page
<b>Steps</b>		1. The user (CR or CP) enters the URL of the Platform in a web browser 2. The Platform checks if the user's IP address is in the IP-range specified by the Administrator 3. If it is the main/welcome page is displayed to the user 4. Otherwise an error page is displayed to the user
<b>Parent</b>		UCU11.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever provides the Platform's URL
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

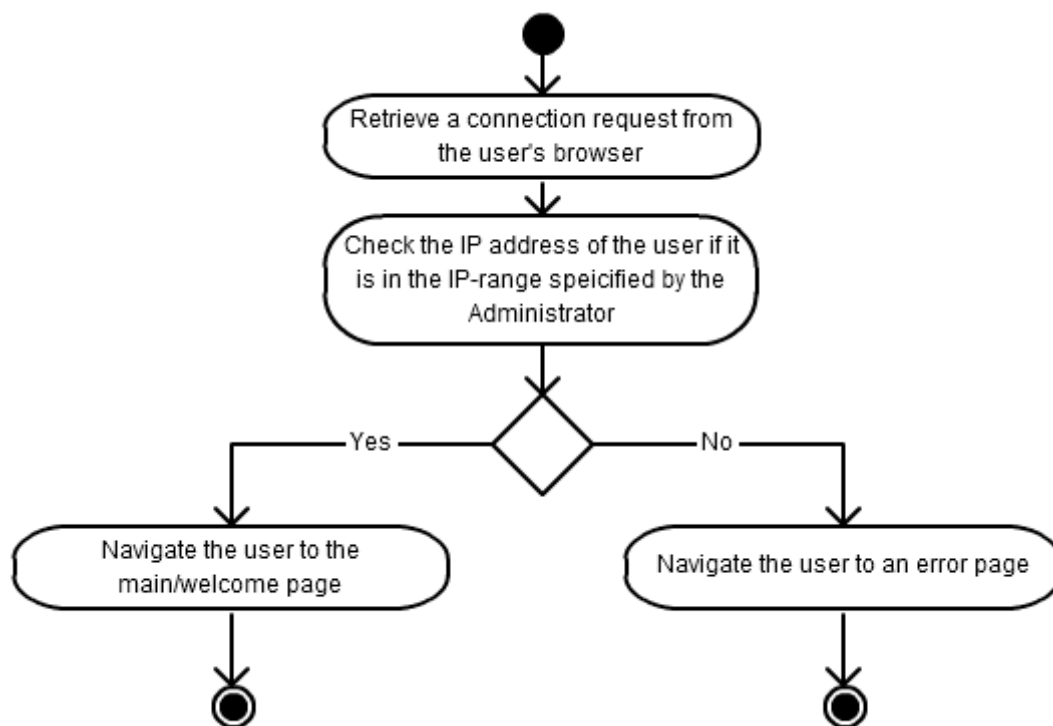


Figure 117: Activity Diagram for checking the IP addresses of the users

## 4.8 Legal Requirements

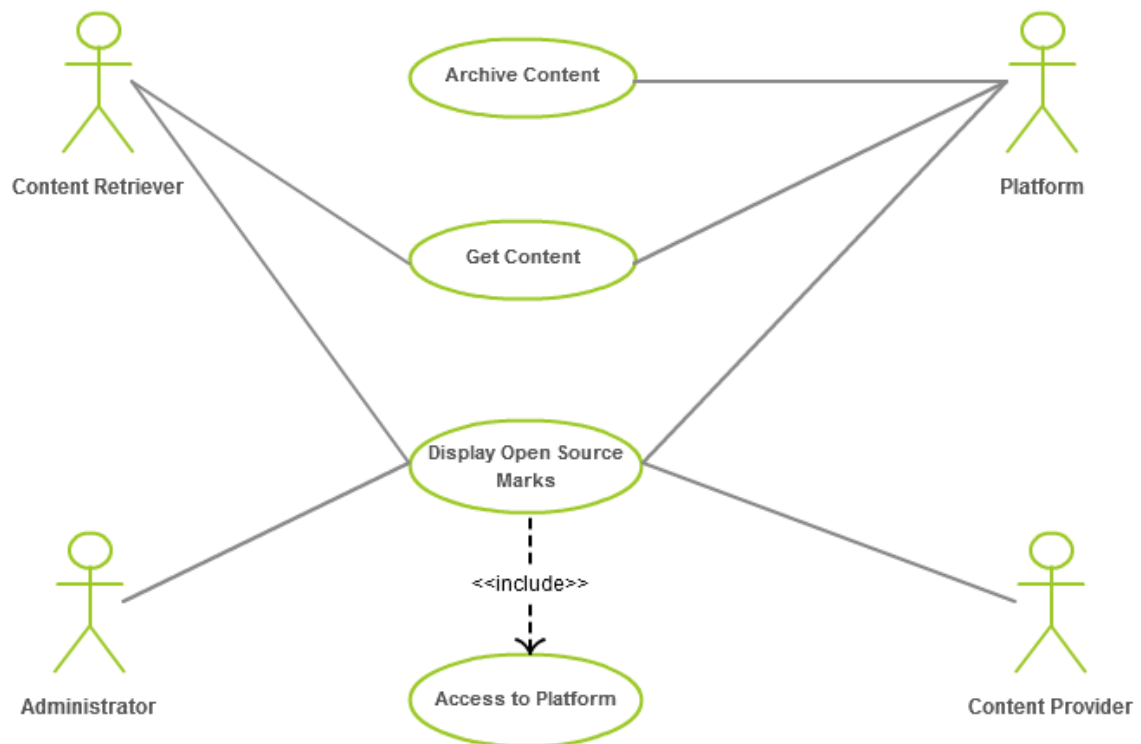


Figure 118: Use Case Diagram for the Legal Requirements

## LR1 – Copyright laws

<b>Requirement category</b>	Legal Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive has to follow copyright laws. Copyright laws exist on international as well as on national level.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Libraries, Businesses
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Library: Copyrights give the author of digital content the right to decide what we are allowed to do with the content.</p> <p>Library: The copyright allows viewing the content when you are inside the library.</p> <p>Business: “As copyright, jurisdiction of copyright is usually, if I understand correctly, by country, of course there are directions globally, for example on European level, but basically as any legal structure.”</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive follows international and national copyright laws.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 6.1: Archive Content” can apply here

Note: “Use Case UCDR 1.1: Get Content” can apply here



## LR2 – Privacy laws

<b>Requirement category</b>	Legal Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive has to follow privacy and data protection laws. These laws exist on international as well as national level.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admin Blog Host, Library
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Admin: We have to follow the German Privacy Act. Library: We are very strict with respect to privacy rules. It is neither logged what users are reading nor what they are accessing. The data are not stored anymore if the user has not used the library for a given time. When validity of the library card ends then we have a given time and after that the privacy says that we are not allowed to store the data anymore.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive follows privacy and data protection laws.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 6.1: Archive Content” can apply here

Note: “Use Case UCDR 1.1: Get Content” can apply here

## LR3 – Additional national laws

<b>Requirement category</b>	Legal Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive must respect additional laws of organisations in the country in which the archive is running. For Germany, it would be e.g. the Tele-Media law.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Library
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Library: The Tele-Media Law is relevant to us.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	An approach is defined how it can be ensured that relevant national rules are followed.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 6.1: Archive Content” can apply here

Note: “Use Case UCDR 1.1: Get Content” can apply here

## LR4 – License of the content

<b>Requirement category</b>	Legal Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive has to respect the license under that the content is published. This could imply that e.g. the content is free for non-commercial purposes.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Blog Author
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Blog Author: “I prefer something like Creative Commons, because it does give the ability to people to reuse without taking away the credit from the person who originally authored.” Blog Author: Someone could use my texts. That does not matter to me. But I think it is mean if someone would take my texts and would sell them. Blog Author: “I use a Creative Commons, by-non-commercial share-like. It is supposed to be 3.0 [...]”
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The archive respects the license of contents that are archived.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

Note: “Use Case UCFR 6.1: Archive Content” can apply here

Note: “Use Case UCDR 1.1: Get Content” can apply here

## LR5 – Open source software license is preferable

<b>Requirement category</b>	Legal Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The BlogForever platform should be licensed under open source software licence.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Admins – Organizations
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Interviewee says: We prefer open source licenses. We like to be able to anticipate costs and commercial software does not allow us to do this. It is easier to calculate how many man months we will need to customize software according to our needs.</p> <p>Interviewer says: Are you using Free Software (without source code)?</p> <p>Interviewee says: For specific utilities, we use free software. For mission-critical apps, we would not do it because it is depended on the community that supports it and this is not reliable.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The BlogForever platform is published under an open source license. This is stated on the website and in the source code.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	Vangelis Banos

## Use Case UCLR 5.1: Display Open Source Marks

<b>Use Case UCLR5.1</b>		Display Open Source Marks
<b>Description</b>		The BlogForever platform is published under an open source license. This is stated on the website and in the source code.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever, Content Provider, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. User have Internet access
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. User has accessed the Platform or navigated to an error page
<b>Steps</b>		1. UCUI1.1 2. The Platform displays the Open Source marks and signs
<b>Parent</b>		UCUI1.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Users provide the Platform's URL
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

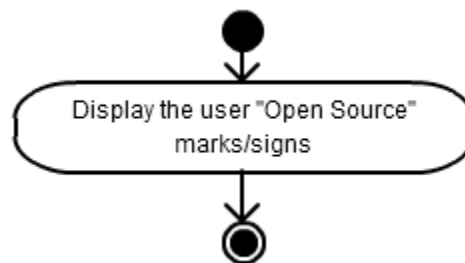


Figure 119: Activity Diagram for displaying open source marks/signs

## 5 Requirement Specifications from the DoW

In the following, the requirements are specified that were identified from the description of work. Thereby, the requirements are organised in subchapters that correspond to the requirement categories presented in chapter 1.3. UML models supplement the requirement descriptions. Requirements were modelled with activity diagrams if appropriate. The use case diagrams in the figures below give an overview on the modelled requirements including the responsible actors.

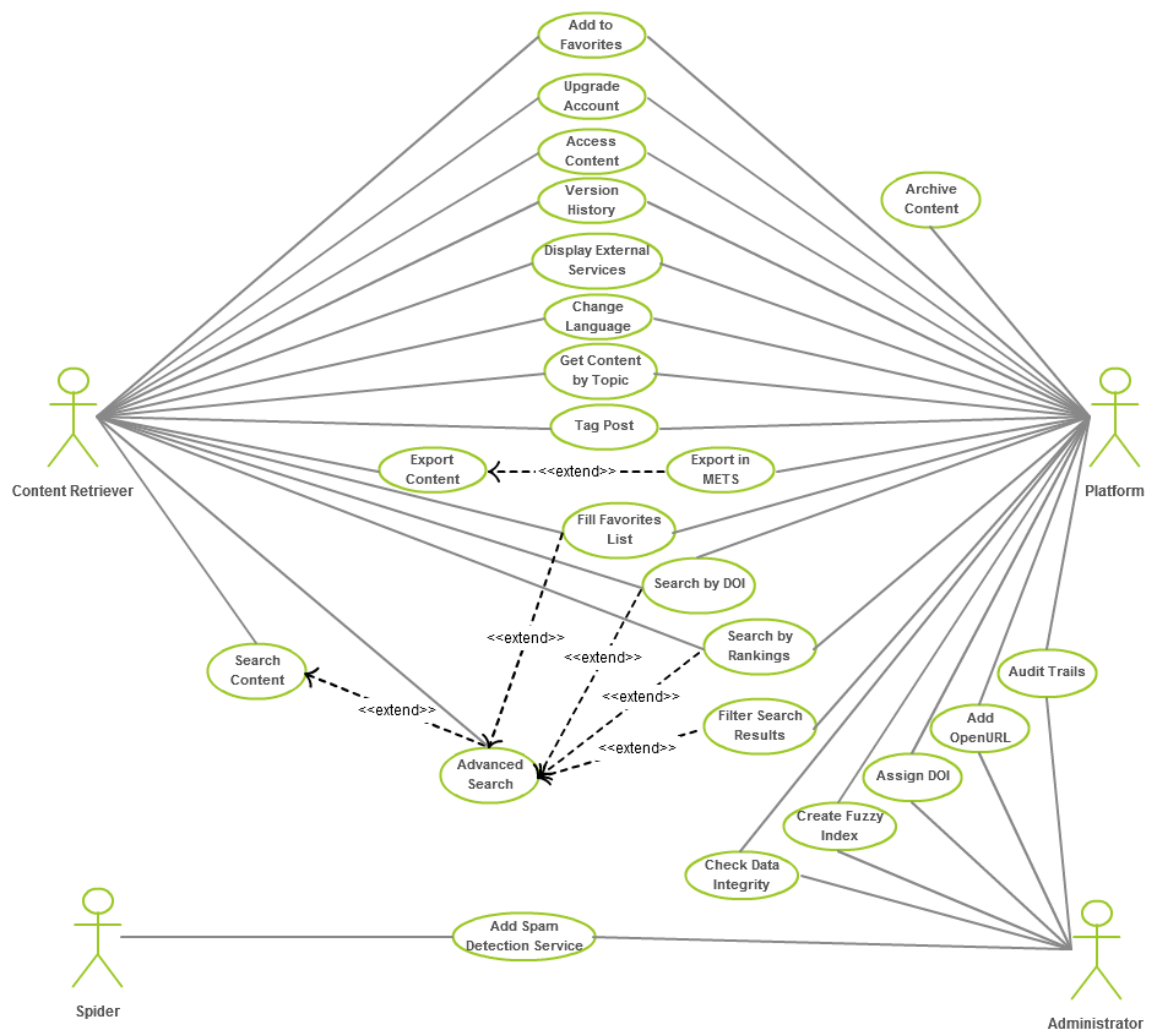
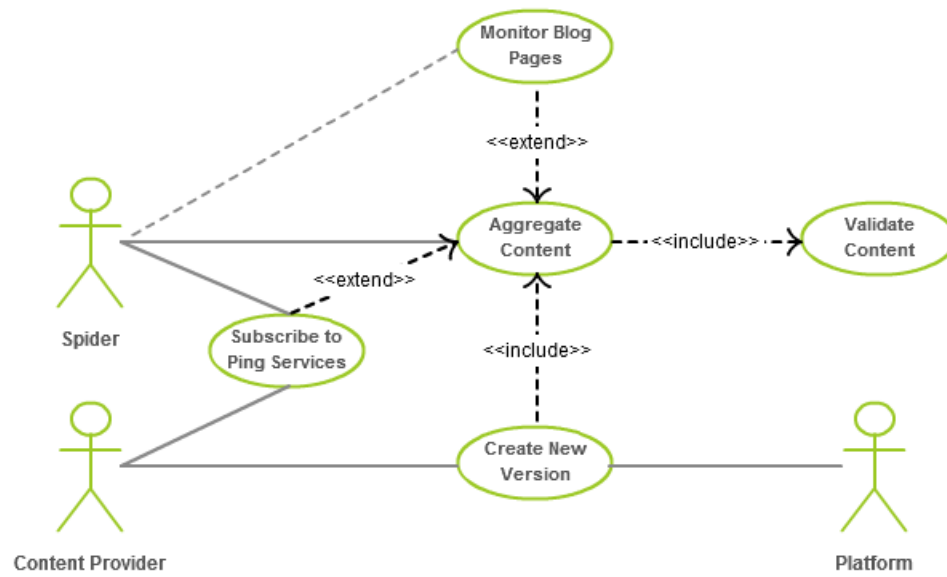


Figure 120: General Use Case Diagram 1

**Figure 121: General Use Case Diagram 2**

## 5.1 Functional Requirements

The data requirement “DR21 – Long term digital preservation” is also a functional requirement. It is described below in the next subchapter.

### FR36 – Meme tracking and trend detection

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>To answer the fragmented and mutually referring nature of weblog contents as persistent conversation (as a mixture of communication and content), new algorithms of prioritizing and recognizing importance of contents for information retrieval requests will also be developed using means of network analysis. Network based metrics will help to establish a ranking among weblogs. A way of computing this ranking is in a similar way to the PageRank algorithm used for web pages: the rank of a page is directly proportional to the number of incoming links to that page. This means that a page with many incoming links (corresponding to many other pages referring to and citing this page) is a highly ranked page. Similarly, the number of incoming links can allow the computation of a ranking between weblogs. This is only one of the possible measurements of the importance of a Weblog. Other parameters, such as the topic, etc. will also be taken into consideration. Further means of Information Visualization will be developed to amplify cognition in the process of accessing the complex network structures in the archive efficiently. The preservation of weblogs has also to take into consideration the dynamic nature of contents evolving through networked discourses.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The final software supports meme tracking and trend detection functionalities.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>



## Use Case UCFR UC36.1: Search by Ranking

<b>Use Case UC36.1</b>		Search by Ranking
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can order search results by page ranks
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views the Advanced Search Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform retrieves the search result and displays to the Content Retriever
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search information through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever checks the “Retrieve Pages by Rankings” option</li> <li>3. The Platform saves the Content Retriever’s search information</li> <li>4. The Platform calculate the page rankings of the blog pages executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>5. The Platform retrieves the search results</li> <li>6. The Platform displays the search results visually by using a node structure (with arrows directed to other blogs)</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR 44.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the keywords and presses a “Search” button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

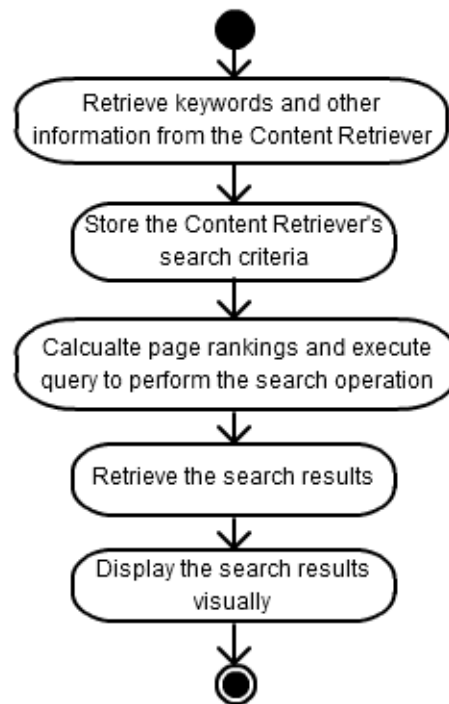


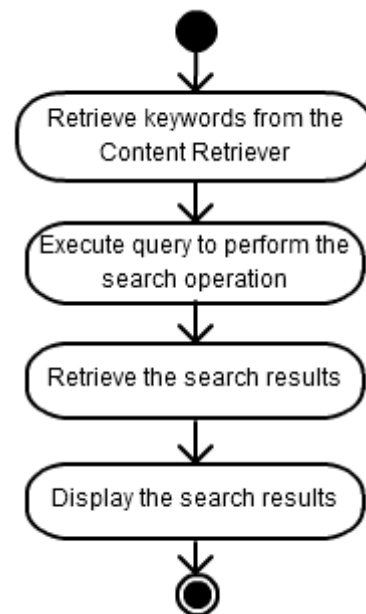
Figure 122: Activity Diagram for page ranking

## FR37 – Web portal

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, Data Requirement, (End)-User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The digital repository application must facilitate the creation of a web portal which will function as a point of access to information and as an interface to the Web Services created.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, content providers, administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasiousimis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR UC37.1: Search Content

<b>Use Case UC37.1</b>		Search Content
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can search blog content in the Platform.
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform retrieves the search result and displays to the Content Retriever
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search keywords</li> <li>2. The Platform executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves the matching and similar records</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the keywords and presses a “Search” button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



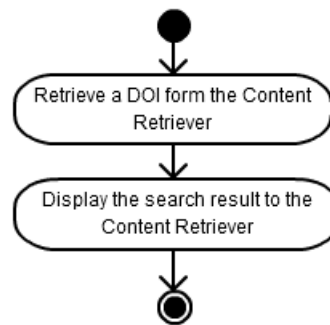
**Figure 123: Activity Diagram for searching content in the Platform**

## FR38 – Multidimensional indexing

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>Multidimensional indexing / fuzzy indexing: A key feature in the successful usage of a system like the one here is a simple yet powerful search methodology. On the one hand, this requires queries supported by standard SQL commands for meta-tags and simple word based queries for the content. However, in many cases users will only have a rough idea about what they are searching for. In this case methods using fuzzy search on the content (segments) will be needed. Fuzzy search on huge databases (several millions of segments) will require optimized search trees and indexing methods. One candidate for this are KD-Trees which are heavily used in text retrieval to find similar segments. To support normalized queries on terms the index should be built on lemmatizes or stemmed terms too.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, Administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The system supports standard queries and fuzzy search. Users could find what they are looking for even if they type an approximate string.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 38.1: Create Fuzzy Index

<b>Use Case UC38.1</b>		Create Fuzzy Index
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can create fuzzy indexes in the archive
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has viewed the Admin Interface related to indexes
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has created a fuzzy index
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Administrator specifies a name for the index 2. The Administrator selects a field to be indexed 3. The Platform creates a fuzzy index on the field
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The views the Admin Interface
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 124: Activity Diagram for creating a fuzzy index**

## FR39 – Digital Rights Management

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	A robust Digital Rights Management (DRM) system which involves the description, layering, analysis, valuation, trading and monitoring of the rights over the repository's assets. Also, support for Open Digital Rights Language (ODRL), which is supported by the W3C should be enabled.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content providers, content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The platform supports a fully functional DRM system
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 39.1: Access Content

<b>Use Case UC39.1</b>		Access Content
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can access blog content if s/he is authorized, otherwise cannot
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever clicks on a blog page to retrieve its contents
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever accesses blog content or not
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform checks if the Content Retriever is authorized to access blog content</li> <li>2. If yes, the Platform retrieves the blog content and displays</li> <li>3. Otherwise, The Platform displays an error message about the failure</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a link to the blog post
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

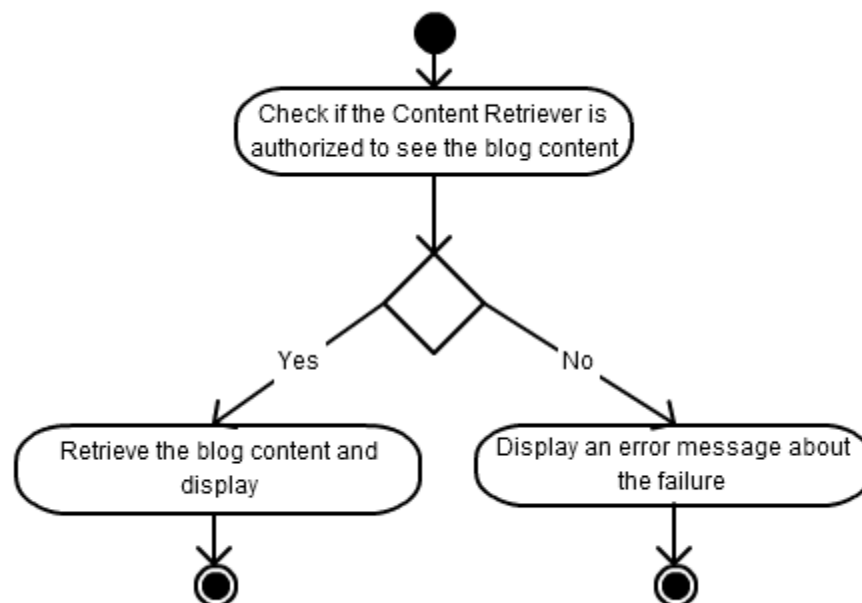


Figure 125: Activity Diagram for accessing content

## FR40 – Billing system

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Billing system will be introduced into the code base. This will allow the system's administrators to exploit added value services. For instance, disk space in the digital repository could be free until users reach a specific quota. Additional disk space could be available for a monthly fee.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Administrators, content retrievers, content providers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The platform provides a billing system service
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>



## Use Case UCFR 40.1: Upgrade Account

<b>Use Case UC40.1</b>		Upgrade Account
<b>Description</b>		The users of the BlogForever platform can upgrade their accounts to get additional services.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views the “Pricing” interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever’s account has been upgraded and Content Retriever can use additional services.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters necessary information (paying method such as credit card or Paypal and etc....) to upgrade his/her account</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves the information and processes it.</li> <li>3. If the retrieved information is correct (valid credit number / paypal account etc....) the Platform sets an upgraded account policy for the Content Retriever</li> <li>4. Otherwise, The Platform displays an error message</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters necessary information and clicks “Upgrade” button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

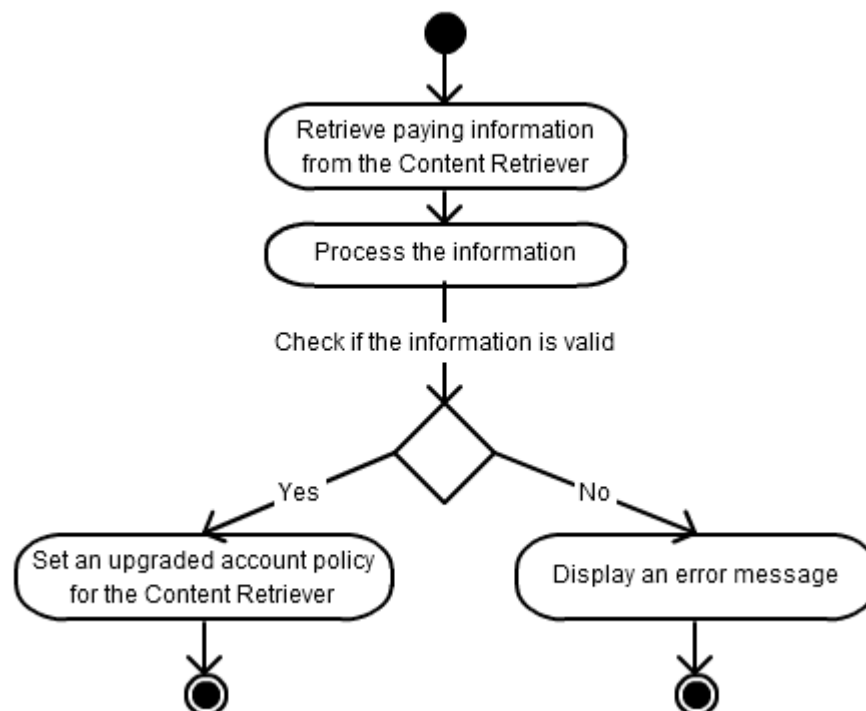


Figure 126: Activity Diagram for upgrading user accounts

## FR41 – Retrieving semi-structured information

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>BLOGFOREVER's web spider will retrieve semi-structured information in contrary with current techniques, which retrieve unstructured data. The web spider's aim will be to retrieve weblog content and distinguish specific elements such as:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Weblog posts</li> <li>2. User comments</li> <li>3. Tags assigned to each post</li> <li>4. Sociological discourse structures among authors created by hyperlinks to other posts.</li> <li>5. Metadata               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Content metadata</li> <li>b. Digital Rights Management metadata</li> <li>c. Technical metadata</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. Semantic information extracted from microformats</li> </ol>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Semi-structured information received from the spider is correctly formatted more than 99% of the cases.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 41.1: Aggregate Content

<b>Use Case UC41.1</b>		Aggregate Content
<b>Description</b>		The Spider aggregates content from the blog pages
<b>Actors</b>		Spider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has provided URL of the blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The content of the blog page has been aggregated by the Spider
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Spider establishes a connection with the blog page</li> <li>2. The Spider checks for intellectual property rights if the Content Provider restricted access to the blog content or not</li> <li>3. If it is allowed, the Spider retrieves the content of the blog and distinguishes specific elements</li> <li>4. UCFR 42.2</li> <li>5. The Spider sends all the content (weblog posts, user comments, metadata, etc.) to the Platform</li> <li>6. Otherwise, display an error message about the failure</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever's aggregation request or the Administrator's approval
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

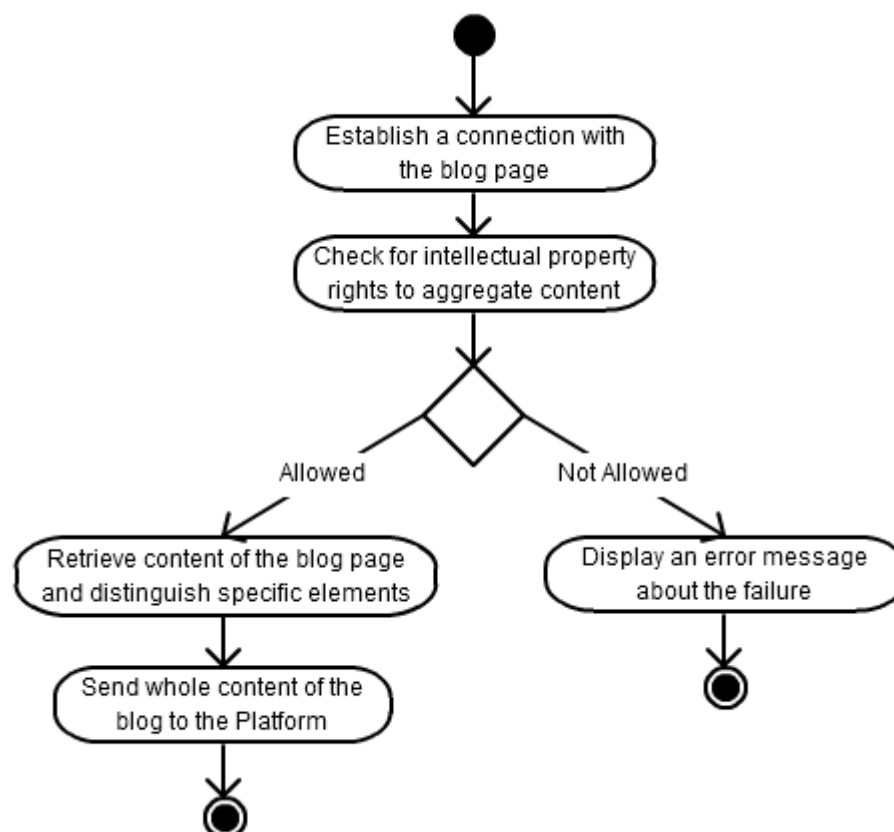


Figure 127: Activity Diagram for aggregating content from blogs

## FR42 – Weblog content validation and spam filtering

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>BLOGFOREVER's weblog spider will validate weblog content using online spam detection web services such as Akismet and Splogspot.</p> <p>BLOGFOREVER will use multiple weblog spam detection services in conjunction with custom filtering and auditing procedures in order to determine a robust weblog spam filtering policy balancing high quality content as well as acceptable performance.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The amount of spam in the platform is almost zero: a user or an administrator would very rarely find a blog that they could consider spam.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 42.1: Add Spam Detection Service

<b>Use Case UC42.1</b>		Validate Content
<b>Description</b>		The Spider validates blog content using online spam detection web services
<b>Actors</b>		Spider, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Spider has validated content of the blog page
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Administrator views the Spider's Configuration Panel 2. The Administrator selects the online spam detection services to be used. 3. The Spider configures itself to use selected services
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Spider has retrieved blog content
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

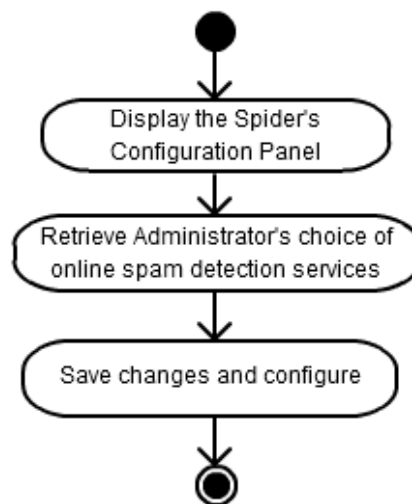
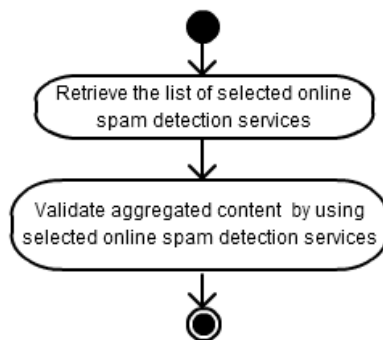


Figure 128: Activity Diagram for adding spam detection services

## Use Case UCFR 42.2: Validate Content

<b>Use Case UC42.2</b>		Validate Content
<b>Description</b>		The Spider validates blog content using online spam detection web services
<b>Actors</b>		Spider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Spider has established a connection with the blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Spider has validated content of the blog page
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Spider retrieves the list of the selected online spam detection services</li> <li>2. The Spider validates blog content by using the spam detection services</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Spider has retrieved blog content
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 129: Activity Diagram for validating blog content**

## FR43 – Access to content in a harmonized way

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Different blogs may have different layouts and different menu structure. This could make final user browsing experience inconsistent and confusing. Blogs and blog posts should have a common way of being displayed to avoid this, and navigation menus should also be the same in all of them.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Blogs and blog posts have a common way of being displayed and they have the same navigation menu.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

Note: UCFR 37.1 can be applied here

## FR44 – Advanced searching

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, Data Requirement, (End)-User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Advanced searching, sorting and clustering capabilities. An innovative information retrieval component will be introduced into the code base, allowing users to have better access to information. Topic clustering as well as ranking and matching algorithms should be implemented. Visual means of presenting search results should be developed
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, content providers, administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The platform content is indexed, and the web portal offers a clear searching interface and a user manual to use the advanced search.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>



## Use Case UCFR 44.1: Advanced Search

<b>Use Case UC44.1</b>		Advanced Search
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can search blog content in the Platform with advanced features and operators
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views the Advanced Search Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform retrieves the search result and displays to the Content Retriever
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search keywords and other information (Boolean operators, date, sorting method, ranking, etc....)</li> <li>2. The Platform saves the Content Retriever's search information</li> <li>3. The Platform executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>4. The Platform retrieves the matching and similar records</li> <li>5. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR 37.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters search information and presses a "Search" button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

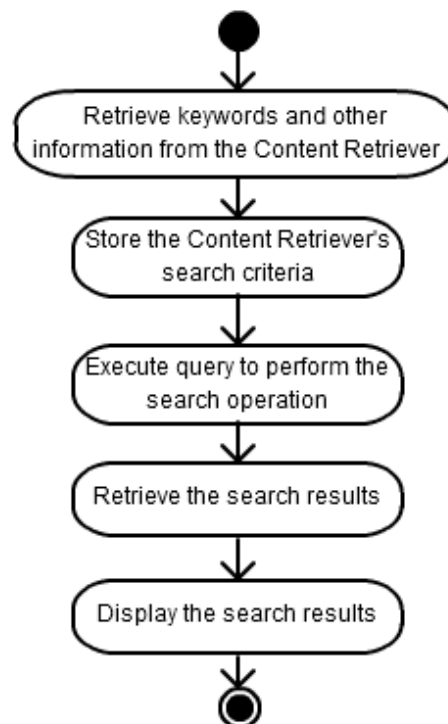
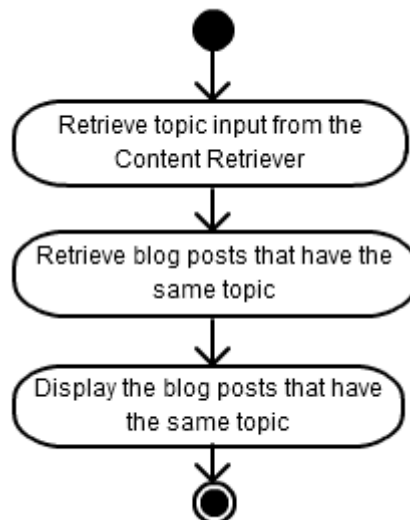


Figure 130: Activity Diagram for advanced search

## Use Case UCFR 44.2: Get Content by Topic

<b>Use Case UC44.2</b>		Get Content by Topic
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can retrieve blog posts according to their topics
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Platform displays all the topics in the archive when the user is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is able to see all the blog posts that have a certain topic
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on a topic</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves blog posts that have the same topic</li> <li>3. The Platform displays blog posts have the same topic</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a topic name
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 131: Activity Diagram for retrieving blog posts by their topics**

## FR45 – Personalized filtering services

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Personalized services that allow registered users to systematically filter their searches based on their individual research interests. A user should be able to use personalized lists of favourite blogs or blog posts. This list could also be filled automatically with blogs and posts matching certain searching criteria inserted by the user.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, content providers, administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can use personalized lists. The user can insert searching criteria to automatically fill the list.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 45.1: Fill Favorites List

<b>Use Case UC45.1</b>		Fill Favorites List
<b>Description</b>		The users of the platform can insert searching criteria to automatically fill their favorites list
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views the Advanced Search Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has added all the search results to his/her favorites list
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever enters the search keywords and other information</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever marks “Add to Favorites” option</li> <li>3. The Platform executes the query retrieved from the Content Retriever</li> <li>4. The Platform retrieves the matching and similar records</li> <li>5. The Platform fills the Content Retriever’s favorites list with the search results</li> <li>6. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR 44.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a “Search” button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

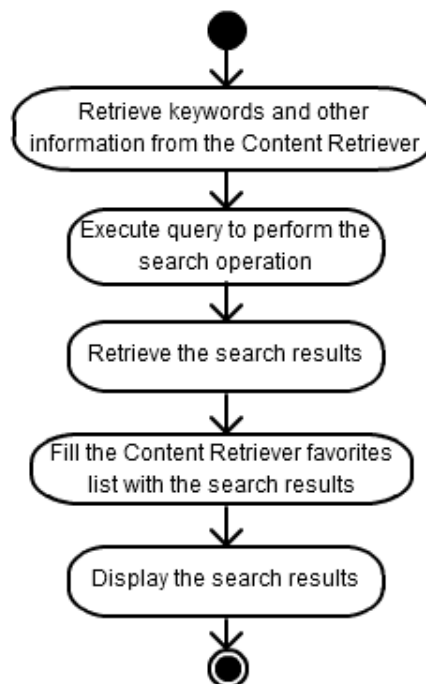
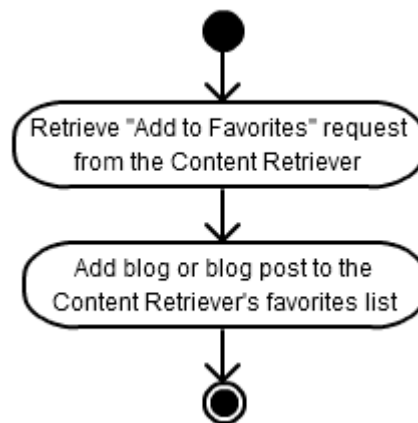


Figure 132: Activity Diagram for content a user’s favorites list by using inserting a searching criteria

## Use Case UCFR 45.2: Add to Favorites

<b>Use Case UC45.2</b>		Add to Favorites
<b>Description</b>		The users of the platform can add blogs or blog posts to their personal favorites list so that they can reach them later easily
<b>Actors</b>		Content Retriever, Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed a blog or a blog post
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed a blog or a blog post
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Add to Favorites” button/link 2. The Platform adds blog or blog post to Content Retriever’s favorites list
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a button/link
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 133: Activity Diagram for adding a blog/blog post to a user’s favorites list**

## Use Case UCFR 45.3: Filter Search Results

<b>Use Case UC45.3</b>		Filter Search Results
<b>Description</b>		The Platform can filter search results according to the Content Retriever's previous searching criteria
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has sent an advanced search request
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform retrieves and filters the search results
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform retrieves the search results</li> <li>2. The Platform filters the search results according to the Content Retriever's previous search criteria.</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR 44.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the keywords and presses a "Search" button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

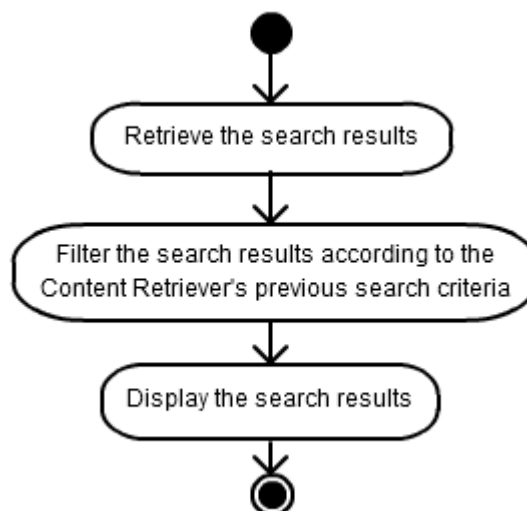


Figure 134: Activity Diagram for filtering search results

## FR46 – Internationalization

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, Data Requirement, (End)-User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Internationalization will be also one of the primary concerns during the development of the digital repository and particularly the user interface. All European languages will be supported. Internationalization will be part of search and retrieval. Using databases which have native Unicode character support, it is possible to enable data storage, indexing, searching and retrieval in virtually any language without excessive developer effort.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, content providers, administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can easily change the language used in the interface choosing any European language. Databases are encoded in UTF-8.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 46.1: Change Language

<b>Use Case UC46.1</b>		Change Language
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to change language.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has changed the language
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever chooses the language from the available languages list 2. The Platform changes the language
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever's selection of the functionality
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

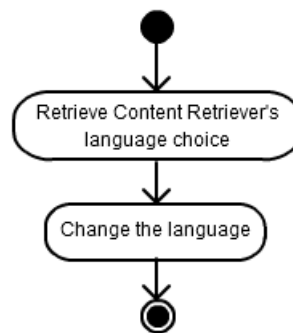


Figure 135: Activity diagram for changing the language



## FR47 – Data integrity

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The repository should include managers' tools for data quality and integrity checking.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	An administrator can configure the platform to perform periodic checks on data integrity that will raise an alert if they find a corrupted file.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 47.1: Check Data Integrity

<b>Use Case UC47.1</b>		Check Data Integrity
<b>Description</b>		The BlogForever platform can be scheduled to check integrity of the data in archive
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has viewed the Platform's Admin Interface
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has notified the Administrator about the status of the archive
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator configures the Platform to perform periodic checks on data integrity in the archive</li> <li>2. The Platform scan all the data in the archive on scheduled time</li> <li>3. The Platform notifies the Administrator about the status of the data in the archive</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator configures the Platform
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

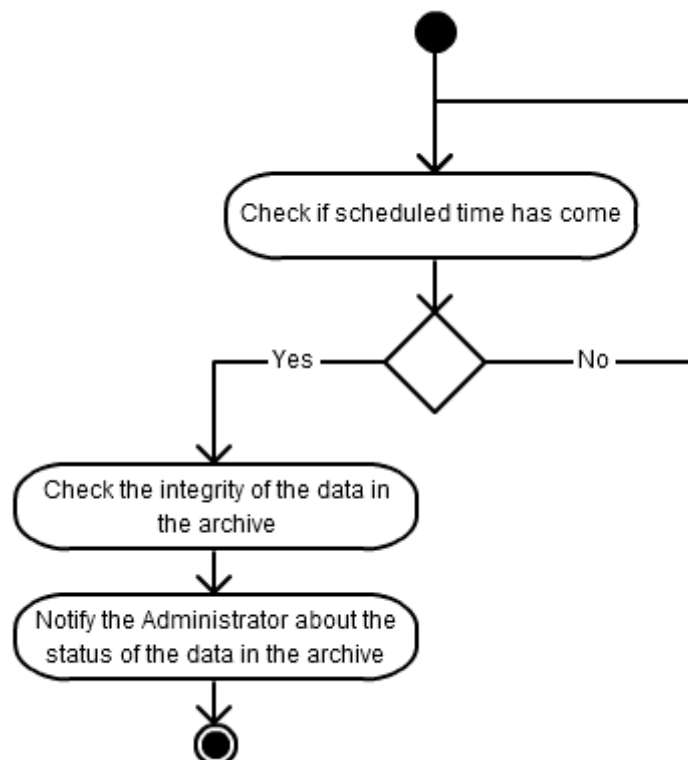


Figure 136: Activity diagram for periodic checking of the data integrity in the archive

## 5.2 Data Requirements

The following requirement is also a data requirement but has already been defined above as a functional requirement. Therefore, it is presented here but is not described again:

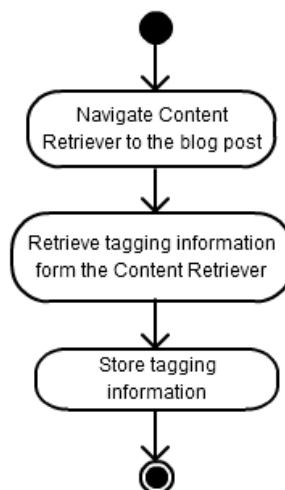
- FR37 – Web portal

### DR21 – Long term digital preservation

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement, Operational Requirement, Functionality Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Long term digital preservation of the archived content, validation of files, checksums, functional preservation, “identifying, safeguarding and preserving archival records and ensuring that these are accessible and understandable”. Sophisticated electronic records management systems will therefore include not only functions necessary for document management, but also features supporting these longer-term perspectives. These include: the association of contextual and structural data within a document; the construction and management of audit trails; document version control; support for disposition scheduling; and scheduling; and maintenance of the relationships between records in files, file series, and the corporate filing plan.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, content providers, administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The platform will implement the Digital Preservation Policy that will be developed in WP3.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCDR 21.1: Tag Post

<b>Use Case UC21.1</b>		Tag Post
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to tag posts with their own metadata
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has tagged post.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever displays a blog post</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever enters necessary information into a box to tag the post</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever clicks on a button to add tagging information</li> <li>4. The Platform stores the tagging information</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks a button to add tags to the posts
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 137: Activity Diagram for post tagging**

## Use Case UCDR 21.2: Audit Trails

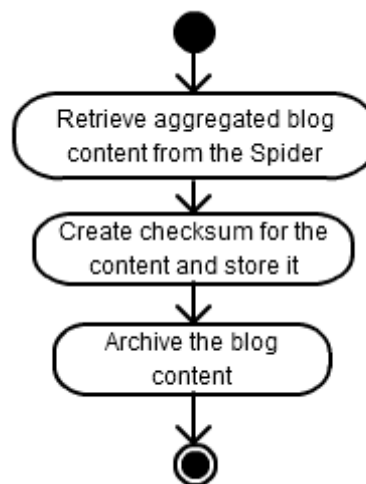
<b>Use Case UC21.2</b>		Audit Trails
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can track all the operations (Who accessed? When? Content updated?, etc.) on a blog page
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator views a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Administrator views all the operations on blog pages
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator clicks on a link/button/tab</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves a list of all the operations performed on a blog page (all accesses, access times, changes, etc....)</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the operations to the Administrator</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator clicks on a link/button/tab
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



Figure 138: Activity diagram for auditing trails on a blog page

## Use Case UCDR 21.3: Archive Content

<b>Use Case UC21.3</b>		Archive Content
<b>Description</b>		The Platform archives the aggregated content from the blog pages
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Spider has aggregated content
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has archived the blog content.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform retrieves the content from the Spider</li> <li>2. The Platform creates a checksum for the content and stores it</li> <li>3. The Platform archives the blog content</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Spider sends the aggregated content to the platform
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

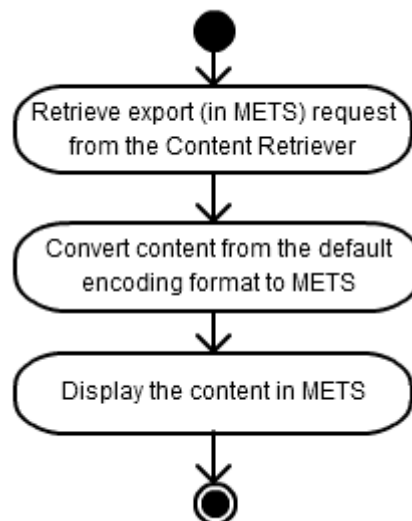


## DR22 – METS

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement, Operational Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Metadata Encoding and Transmission Standard (METS) schema is a standard for encoding descriptive, administrative, and structural metadata regarding objects within a digital library expressed using the XML Schema language of the W3C.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The system uses METS to keep and export metadata.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCDR 22.1: Export in METS

<b>Use Case UC22.1</b>		Export in METS
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can export blog content in METS format
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has exported content
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on “METS” from available output formats list</li> <li>2. The Platform converts the content from the default encoding format to METS</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the content in METS</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UC UCIR 6.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on “METS” link/button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 139: Activity Diagram for exporting content in METS**



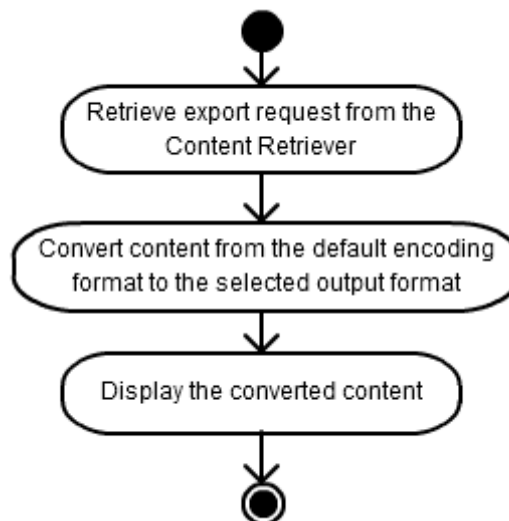
### 5.3 Interoperability Requirements

#### IR6 – Facilities to enable interoperability

<b>Requirement category</b>	Interoperability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>Facilities to enable interoperability with existing European digital libraries and infrastructures such as the European Digital Library project will be necessary. The system must become part of the Open Archives Initiative and be capable of publishing OAI metadata in a variety of schemas (including unqualified DC, the PKP (Open Journal Systems/Open Conference Systems) Dublin Core extension, MODS, and MARCXML). Additional schema must be supported via plugins.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">**BlogForever will integrate its content with existing digital libraries and digital preservation facilities.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, content providers, administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Proven interoperable functionality with other standard systems such as the European Digital Library project.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCIR 6.1: Export Content

<b>Use Case UC6.1</b>		Export Content
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can export blog content in various output formats
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has exported content
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on the name of output format (DC, MODS, MARCXML, etc.)</li> <li>2. The Platform converts the content from the default encoding format to the selected output format</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the converted content</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on the name of an output format
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 140: Activity Diagram for exporting content**

## IR7 – OpenURL support

<b>Requirement category</b>	Interoperability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>OpenURL Support is also required. The OpenURL standard is designed to support mediated linking from information resources (sources) to library services (targets). A "link resolver", or "link-server", parses the elements of an OpenURL and provides links to appropriate services as identified by a library. A source is generally a bibliographic citation or bibliographic record used to generate an OpenURL. A target is a resource or service that helps satisfy user's information needs. Examples include full-text repositories; abstracting, indexing, and citation databases; online library catalogues; and other Web resources and services.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The system supports OpenURL.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCIR 7.1: Add OpenURL

<b>Use Case UC7.1</b>		Add OpenURL
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can enter an OpenURL to retrieve links to the services such as licensed and/or free e-copies of full-text articles, online catalogues and etc.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has retrieved services
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator provides an OpenURL to the Platform</li> <li>2. The Platform parses the OpenURL and retrieves links to the services</li> <li>3. The Platform stores the links to the services</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator enters an OpenURL
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

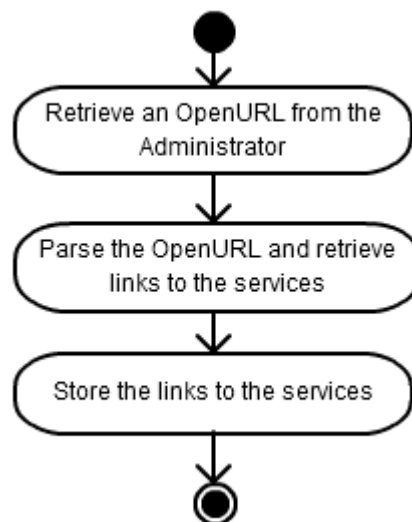


Figure 141: Activity Diagram for adding an OpenURL

## Use Case UCIR 7.2: Display External Services

<b>Use Case UC7.2</b>		Display External Services
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can display the links to the services stored in the Platform
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views the links to the services
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks “External Services” link/tab/button</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves the list of links to the services</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the list of the links to the services</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks a link/tab/button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

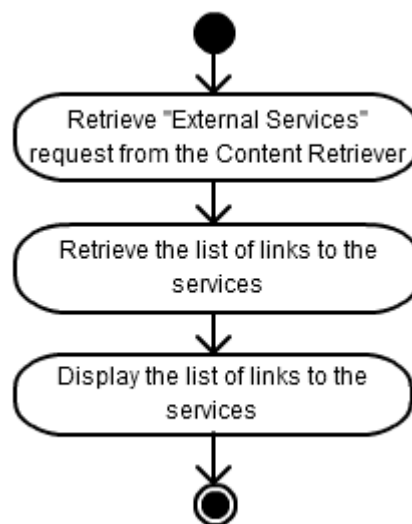


Figure 142: Activity Diagram displaying links to the external services

## IR8 – Digital Object Identifier

<b>Requirement category</b>	Interoperability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Digital Object Identifier (DOI) is a permanent identifier given to an electronic resource that, in contrast to a URL, does not depend on the electronic document's location. The International DOI Foundation (IDF) defines DOI name as "a digital identifier for any object of intellectual property"; it explains that the DOI is used for "persistently identifying a piece of intellectual property on a digital network and associating it with related current data in a structured extensible way".
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers, administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The system uses DOI to identify the objects archived and exported.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCIR 8.1: Assign DOI

<b>Use Case UC8.1</b>		Assign DOI
<b>Description</b>		The Administrator can assign DOI to the content in the archive
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Administrator views a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Administrator has assigned DOI to a blog page
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator enters a new DOI to a box provided</li> <li>2. The Platform checks if the DOI provided, used before</li> <li>3. If yes, the Platform displays an error message</li> <li>4. Otherwise, the Platform changes the DOI of the blog page</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator enters a DOI to a box provided
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

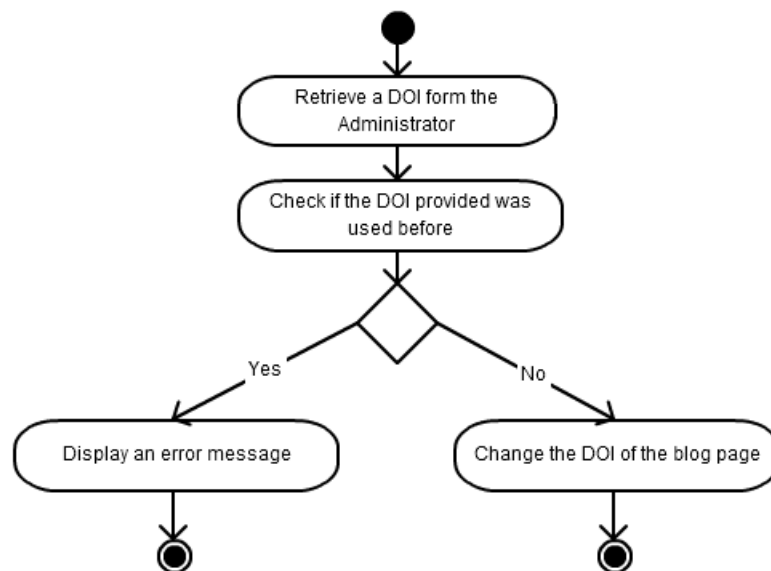
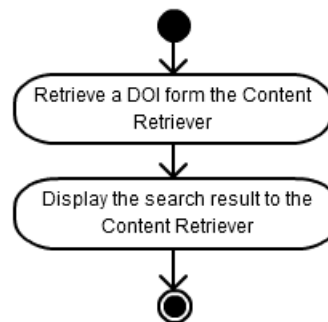


Figure 143: Activity Diagram for assigning a DOI to a blog page

## Use Case UCIR 8.2: Search by DOI

<b>Use Case UC8.2</b>		Search by DOI
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever can search a blog page by its DOI
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed the Advanced Search panel
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content has viewed search results
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever enters the DOI of the blog page through the Search Interface 2. The Content Retriever select “DOI” from the “category” box 3. The Platform displays the search result
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR 44.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the DOI of the blog page
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 144: Activity Diagram for searching a blog page by its DOI**



## **5.4 (End-)User Interface Requirements& Usability**

The functional requirement “FR37 – Web portal” is also a user interface requirement. It has already been defined above.

## 5.5 Performance Requirements

### PR3 – Real time archiving

<b>Requirement category</b>	Performance Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>The web spider will constantly monitor weblogs' RSS feeds in order to detect updates and perform instant weblog archive synchronization.</p> <p>BLOGFOREVER will utilize Blog Pings to perform Real Time Archiving. BLOGFOREVER will actively monitor weblogs and perform online content aggregation as soon as content is published online, improving dramatically the archive's fidelity.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Administrators, content providers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Blog content in the platform is kept up-to-date with its sources by a specified amount of time defined by the administrator.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCPR 3.1: Subscribe to Ping Services

<b>Use Case UC3.1</b>		Subscribe to Ping Services
<b>Description</b>		The Spider can subscribe to the ping services that notify the Spider when a change occurs, provided by the blog providers.
<b>Actors</b>		Spider, Content Provider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Provider is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Spider has subscribed to the ping services
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Spider sends a “subscribe” request to the Content Provider</li> <li>2. The Content Provider accepts this request</li> <li>3. The Content Provider notifies the Spider when a change in the blog content occurs</li> <li>4. The Spider aggregates the content</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR 41.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Spider sends a subscribe request
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

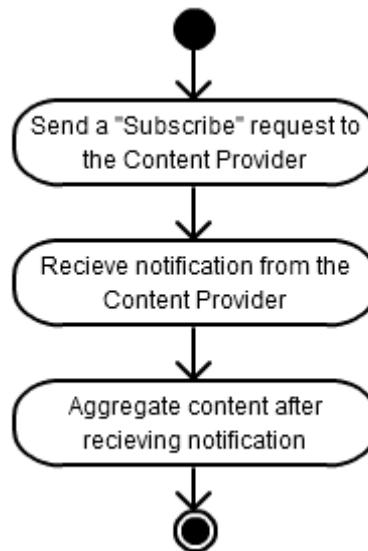


Figure 145: Activity Diagram for subscribing to ping service

## Use Case UCPR 3.2: Monitor Blog Pages

<b>Use Case UC3.2</b>		Monitor Blog Pages
<b>Description</b>		The Spider can monitor blog pages to detect updates and aggregate content immediately.
<b>Actors</b>		Spider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has provided URL of the blog page.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Spider has aggregated the content of the blog page
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Spider establishes a connection with the blog page</li> <li>2. The Spider monitors the changes/updates in the blog page</li> <li>3. The Spider aggregates the content when a change in the content occurs</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UCFR 41.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever provides URL of the blog page
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

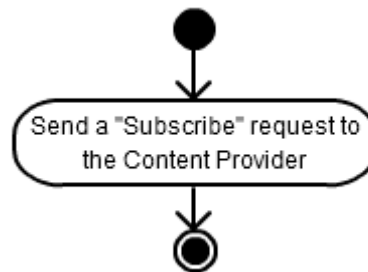


Figure 146: Activity Diagram for monitoring blog pages

### 5.5.1 Capacity and Scalability Requirements

## CS4 – Clustering and high availability architectures

<b>Requirement category</b>	Capacity and Scalability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p><b>Clustering and high availability architectures</b> must be supported in order to achieve high levels of reliability and accessibility. The system's design and implementation should accommodate at least 10 million items (weblog posts), assuming adequate underlying capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dynamic deployment of BLOGFOREVER's nodes and services</li> <li>• Integration of external services requiring minimal effort</li> <li>• Provision of existing services to other service providers.</li> <li>• The system must scale from a single-server to the largest organizational multi-server system.</li> </ul>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Developers</li> <li>• Content retrievers</li> <li>• Administrators</li> </ul>
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The system must have the expected functionality for all use cases described in the DoW.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## CS5 – Modularity

<b>Requirement category</b>	Capacity and Scalability Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Service-oriented Architecture (SOA) style for creating and using processes packaged as services, throughout their life cycle. SOA allow different applications to exchange data and participate in business processes. These functions are loosely coupled with the operating systems and programming languages underlying the applications. SOA separates functions into distinct units (services), which can be distributed over a network and can be combined and reused to create business applications.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Developers</li> <li>• Administrators</li> </ul>
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The system architecture is divided in modules, with clear boundaries and well-documented interfaces between them.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## 5.6 Operational Requirements

The following requirements are also operational requirements but have already been defined above in the data requirements. Therefore, they are presented here but are not described again:

- DR21 – Long term digital preservation
- DR22 – METS

## OP1 – Versioning

<b>Requirement category</b>	Operational Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Versioning will be enabled for every data object stored in the digital repository. Versioning, in which multiple revisions of items are stored in a repository, will become increasingly important as the BLOGFOREVER repository grows older and content is migrated to new formats and technologies. Versioning in our model covers linear revisions, not alternative representations. Hence, video, audio and transcribed-text "versions" of a particular lecture, say, could be deposited as different Manifestations within an Item, or different Items related to one another, but would not be considered as two Versions of the same Item.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content providers, content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The system supports versioning for every data object type.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCOP 1.1: Create New Version

<b>Use Case UC1.1</b>		Create New Version
<b>Description</b>		The Platform creates a new version of the blog page when its content is updated
<b>Actors</b>		Spider, Platform, Content Provider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Provider is logged in
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has created a new version of the blog page
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Provider updates the content of the blog page</li> <li>2. UCFR 41.1</li> <li>3. The Platform creates a new version for the blog page</li> <li>4. The Platform archives the content</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Provider updates the blog page
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

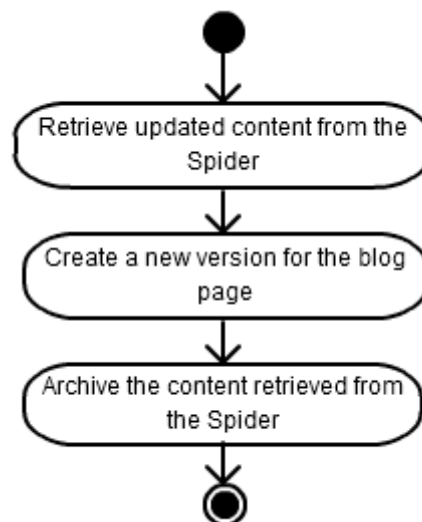
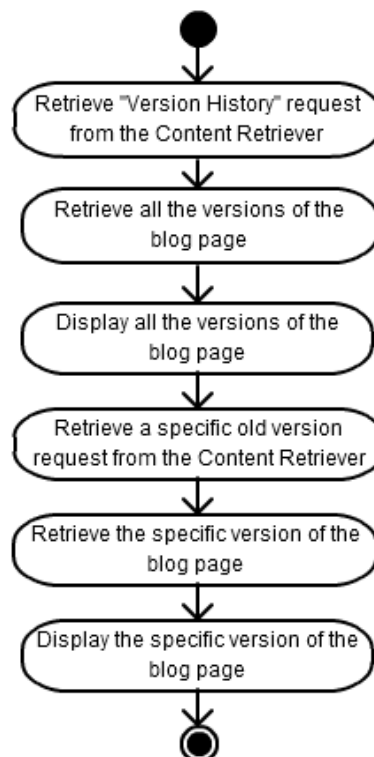


Figure 147: Activity Diagram for creating new version for blog content



## Use Case UCOP 1.2: Version History

<b>Use Case UC1.2</b>		Version History
<b>Description</b>		The Content Retriever is able to view all the versions of a blog page
<b>Actors</b>		Platform, Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever views a blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed an old version
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on “Version History” button</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves all the versions of the blog page</li> <li>3. The Platform displays all versions of the blog page</li> <li>4. The Content Retriever clicks on a specific old version</li> <li>5. The Platform retrieves the specific version of the blog page</li> <li>6. The Platform displays the specific version of the blog page</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on “Version History” button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 148: Activity Diagram for viewing an old version**

## OP2 – OAIS

<b>Requirement category</b>	Operational Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	BlogForever will utilize OAIS. As part of OAIS, BlogForever will support digital preservation activities such as keeping track of the location, provenance, and syntactic and semantic information required to be able to validate the authenticity, integrity and completeness of a digital object and to be able to reproduce a facsimile of its initial instantiation, etc.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content providers, content retrievers, administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The system is OAIS compliant.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## OP3 – APIs for developers

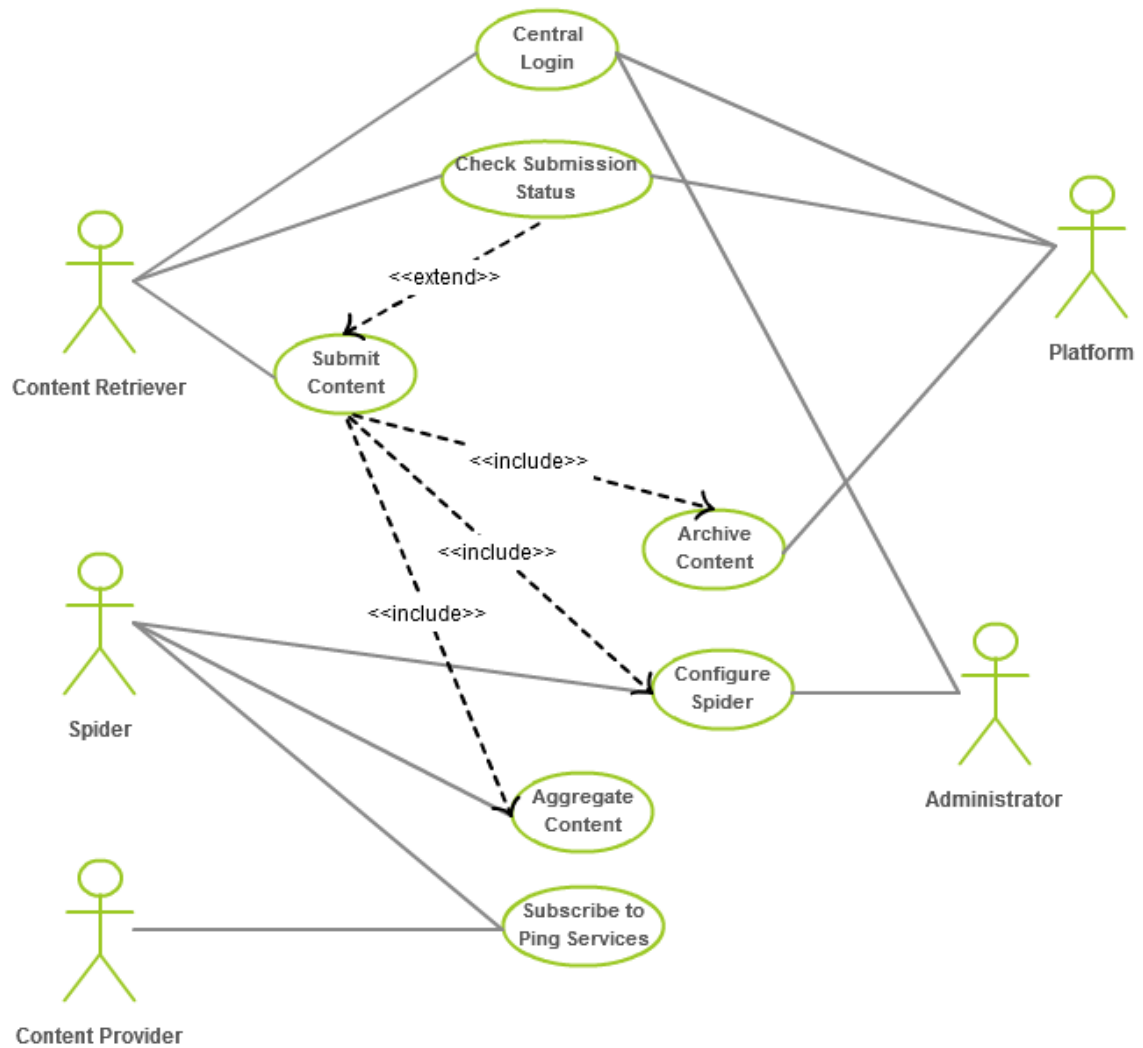
<b>Requirement category</b>	Operational
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	(x) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	BlogForever will provide APIs for developers to interact with weblog data: read, write, maintenance and configuration functions may be provided.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Developers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Extracted from the Description of work.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Developers can use an API to read and write data, configure the platform and perform maintenance actions.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jaime García Llopis</li> <li>• Nikolaos Kasioumis</li> </ul>

## 6 Requirement Specifications from the deliverable D2.1

In the following, the requirements are specified that were identified from the BlogForever Deliverable 2.1 Weblogs Survey Report. Thereby, the requirements are organised in subchapters that correspond to the requirement categories presented in chapter 1.3. UML models supplement the requirement descriptions. Requirements were modelled with activity diagrams if appropriate. The use case diagrams in the figures below give an overview on the modelled requirements including the responsible actors.



Figure 149: General Use Case Diagram 1

**Figure 150: General Use Case Diagram 2**

## 6.1 Functional Requirements

### FR48 – Crawler/Spider Support Platform Flexibility

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive intake spider/crawler should be able to process blogs authored on as many platforms as possible, but most importantly Mokono blog technology, Wordpress, Blogger...
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content provider, content retriever and administrator
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Common blog authoring practices (Table 16) and 5.2.1 Platforms and software used (Figure 19)</p> <p>The survey identified that 61.3% participants were using a blog providers and the list of these blog providers and its different versions is comprehensive. Table 16 in 4.3.2.2 of the survey data indicates the most popular blogging platforms and Figure 19 from 5.2.1 details information of the considerable variation across most popular software platforms.</p> <p>Therefore, the platform flexibility support by the spider is essential.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The crawler works for any platform and any version of it
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 48.1: Aggregate Content

<b>Use Case UC48.1</b>		Aggregate Content
<b>Description</b>		The Spider aggregates content from the blog pages
<b>Actors</b>		The Spider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has provided URL of the blog page
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The content of the blog page has been aggregated by the Spider
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Spider establishes a connection with the blog page</li> <li>2. The Spider retrieves the content of the blog</li> <li>3. The Spider sends the content to the Platform</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever's aggregation request or the Administrator's approval
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

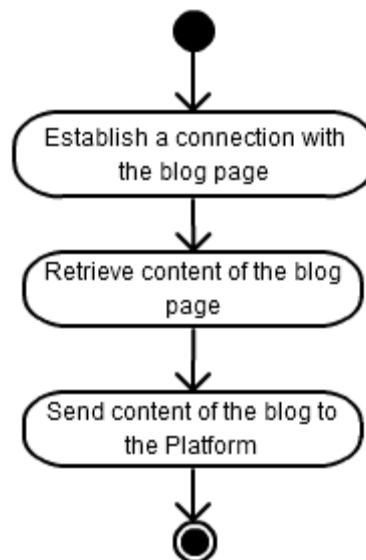


Figure 151: Activity Diagram for aggregating content from blogs

## Use Case UCFR 48.2: Archive Content

<b>Use Case UC48.2</b>		Archive Content
<b>Description</b>		The Platform archives the aggregated content from the blog pages
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Spider has aggregated content
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has archived the blog content.
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Platform retrieves the content from the Spider 2. The Platform archives the blog content
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Spider sends the aggregated content to the platform
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

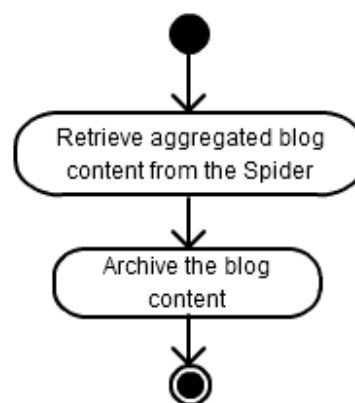


Figure 152: Activity Diagram for archiving blog contents

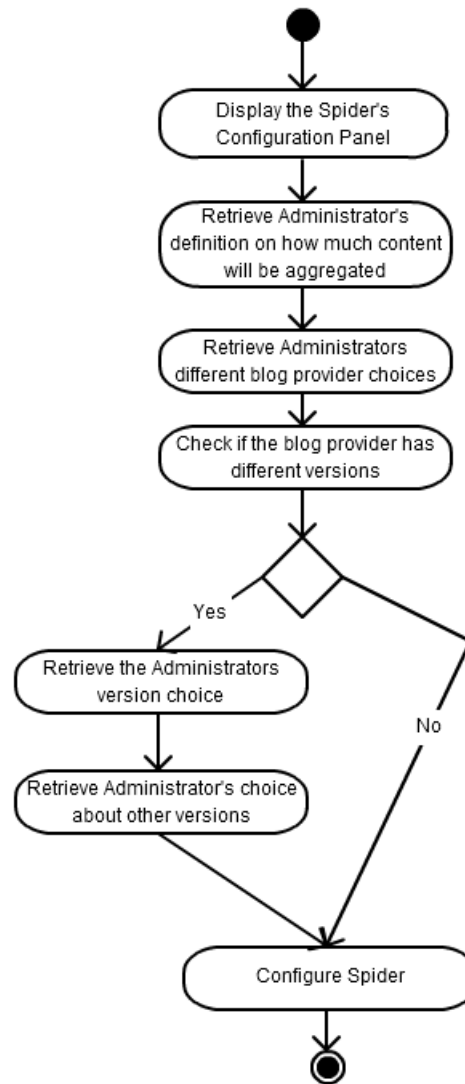


## FR49 – Support Different Versions of Blogging Software

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	As well as being able to interpret multiple platforms the spider/crawler will have to be aware of the different versions of the platforms, especially with self -installed solutions such as WordPress.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content provider, content retriever and administrator
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>5.2.1 Platforms and software used (Figure 20)</p> <p>The technical survey identified that while the number of earlier platforms across active blogs remains substantial, the majority of software platforms (average around 75%) use more recent versions. These results are limited to the providers of software packages that do specify their versions. Among the providers that do not specify information about the software version are: Blogger, Typepad and Joomla.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The crawler works for any platform and any version of it
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 49.1: Configure Spider

<b>Use Case UC49.1</b>		Configure Spider
<b>Description</b>		The Spider can be configured so that it can support multiple platforms and their different versions
<b>Actors</b>		Spider & Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Spider has a configuration panel
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Spider enables the modular functionality to process the selected type/version of blog provider
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator views the Spider's Configuration Panel.</li> <li>2. The Administrator defines how much content will be aggregated (comments, style, embedded material, snapshots etc.)</li> <li>3. The Administrator selects supported blog provider options.</li> <li>4. If selected blog provider has different versions that should be dealt with separately, a version list also displayed.</li> <li>5. The Administrator selects different versions of blog provider platform that the spider will support.</li> <li>6. In case of the Spider does not support the selected version, the Administrator selects the "Try similar versions" option.</li> <li>7. The Administrator saves the changes</li> <li>8. The Spider configures itself</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Administrator's selection of the functionality
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 153: Activity Diagram for configuring the spider**

## FR50 – Most Important Content Type (Text/Html)

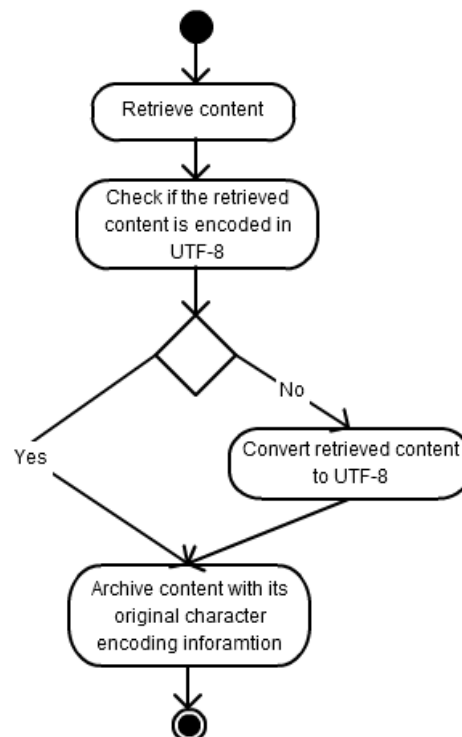
<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Given the nature of the content it would be unwise to try to separate the text from the HTML as stylistic elements within the HTML may be important to the understanding of the text, for example: indentation or use of unmarked tables to indicate quotes.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content provider, content retriever and administrator
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>5.2.2 Document Character Set (Figure 21)</p> <p>The results for evaluating the use of content and characters attributes across the blogs studied, suggested that “text/html” is the most widely (61%) specified content type within this studied.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Stylistic elements within the HTML are considered to the understanding of the text so we obtain correct content representation.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## FR51 – UTF-8 - The Default Character Encoding

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The default character encoding on the archive should be UTF-8.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5.2.2 Document Character Sets: In addition to content type Req 3, information about encoding has also captured and analyzed in 5.2.2. UTF-8 is most frequently used encoding. Other char sets did not exceed 6%. Encoding information remained unidentified in 39% of the cases (Figure 22). The overwhelming majority of studied resources are distributed in Unicode as text/html documents.</li> <li>55% of blogs are encoded in UTF-8 and it is widely adopted (<a href="http://developers.sun.com/dev/gadc/technicalpublications/articles/utf8.html">http://developers.sun.com/dev/gadc/technicalpublications/articles/utf8.html</a>)</li> </ul>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	All the large number of characters for different written languages are rendered and represented correctly
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Silvia Arango Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 51.1: Check Character Encoding

<b>Use Case UC51.1</b>		Check Character Encoding
<b>Description</b>		The Platform checks for the character encoding of the blog page.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Spider sends the content of the blog page to the Platform
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform converts the content to UTF-8 if necessary then archives with original character encoding
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Platform retrieves content from the Spider component</li> <li>2. The Platform checks the character encoding of the content</li> <li>3. If the character encoding is not UTF-8, the Platform converts the content to UTF-8</li> <li>4. The platform archives the content with original character encoding information</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Spider sends the content of the blog page
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 154: Activity Diagram for checking the character encoding**

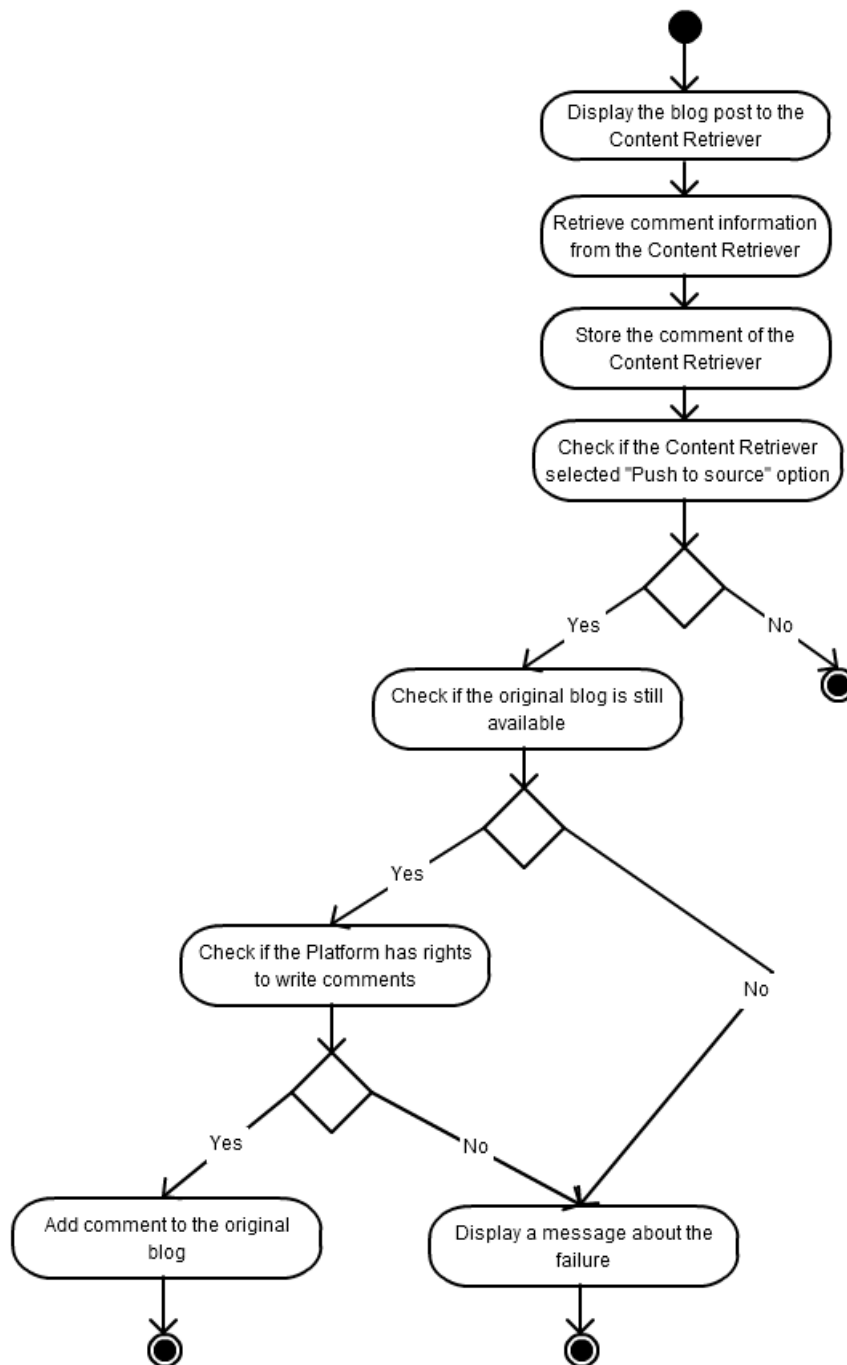
## FR52 - Sharing and Promotion Beyond the Archive

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement, (End)- User Interface Requirements
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Archive users who comment on blogs within the archive may want their comments to be pushed to the source blog, if still available. In addition to 'keep private' or 'public' an additional option should be available when submitting comments 'push to source'. Selecting this option will initiate an attempt by the archive to push a comment to the source blog
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content providers and content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>4.3.2.6 Aspect of blogs for preservation (Table 29)</p> <p>47% of author respondents indicated that the increasing readership and building a blog community was a key goal for blog authors within an archive. By having their blog archived authors get access to highly interested group of active readers. This satisfies their target of increased readership to an extent, but without the ability to easily push comment out of the archive to the source blog, the benefits will not be apparent to the authors.</p> <p>Also content retrievers will be keen to only have to post once within the archive. This will add to the usefulness of the archive from retrievers perspective</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Active archive users use the commenting tool extensively within the archive and their comments can be pushed to the source blog if still available.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 52.1: Push Comment

<b>Use Case UC52.1</b>		Push Comment
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to push comments to original blog
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has pushed the Content Retriever's comment to the original post
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever views a blog post</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever enters his/her comment on a box provided below the blog post.</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever marks the "Push to source" option</li> <li>4. The Content Retriever clicks on the "Add Comment" button</li> <li>5. The Platform stores the comment information</li> <li>6. The Platform checks if the original blog is still available.</li> <li>7. If yes, the Platform checks whether it has right to write the comment</li> <li>8. If yes, The Platform adds the comment to the original blog.</li> <li>9. The Platform displays a message about the status of pushing operation</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UC UCUI 24.1
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever's selection of the functionality
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		





**Figure 155: Activity Diagram for pushing comment to the original blog**

## FR53 – Snapshots Versions of Blog Designs in the Archive

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	To capture the original design of a blog, the platform could snapshot the screen at the point a blog is archived. Different snapshots for the source blog could be available once the overall blog design changes.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content provider, content retriever and administrator
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>4.3.2.2 Common Blog Authoring (Table 12)</p> <p>In terms of blog design activities, like changing the appearance or the feel of the blog, nearly 60% of the respondents declared that rarely applied those changes.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can find and download the different blog design snapshots easily.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 53.1: Subscribe to Ping Services

<b>Use Case UC53.1</b>		Subscribe to Ping Services
<b>Description</b>		The Spider can subscribe to the ping services that notify the Spider when a change occurs, provided by the blog providers.
<b>Actors</b>		Spider & Content Provider
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Provider is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Spider has subscribed to the ping services
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Spider sends a “subscribe” request to the Content Provider 2. The Content Provider accepts this request
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Spider sends a subscribe request
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

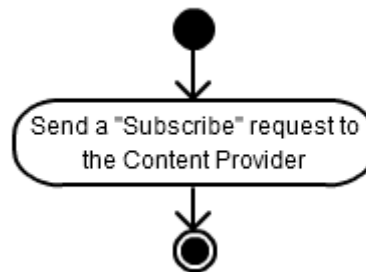


Figure 156: Activity Diagram for subscribing to ping services

## FR54 – What to Archive: Text and Comments

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	( X) <b>Essential</b> ( ) <b>Recommended</b> ( ) <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The archive should contain the full text of a post plus embedded material where possible.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content providers and content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	4.3.2.6 Aspect of Blogs for Preservation (Table 30 & Figure 16 - Importance of preserving blog data)  46.3% of authors regard their entirely blog content as the highest priority to be preserved, with posts second with 45.7% of all authors indicating these elements are key to archive. Combine this with the 25% who indicate that comments are the main way of ranking a post and a compelling argument can be made to preserve comments as well as the original content.
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can find the archived blog content as closed to the original as possible.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## FR55 – Universal Login & Central Login

<b>Requirement category</b>	Functional Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>Once logged into the platform users should be able to access all archives on the same platform - provided the archives owner has granted that user the rights to view their archive</p> <p>As well as the archives own login system should users be able connect form third party sites like Facebook, Google+...</p> <p>On the other hand, archives accessed through libraries may need/have an admin panel where library staff create and assign logins for the duration of a course or just for the day. Could there also be an option to allow users to be synced across from and LDAP server?</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	Facebook and Google+ integration reduces barriers to entry and also further promotes the sharing of content from the archive. Promoting both the authors content and the archive
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can easily promote the archive content via a universal login.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCFR 55.1: Central Login

<b>Use Case UC55.1</b>		Central Login
<b>Description</b>		A login request and the login credentials of the User are retrieved from platform to be used in secure communication.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever & Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. An account for the Content Retriever or Administrator must exist.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever or Administrator is logged in
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever or Administrator specifies required information for login (for example: username, password...).</li> <li>2. The Platform checks for the Content Retriever's or Administrator's credentials.</li> <li>3. The Platform navigates Content Retriever or Administrator accordingly</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever or Administrator clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

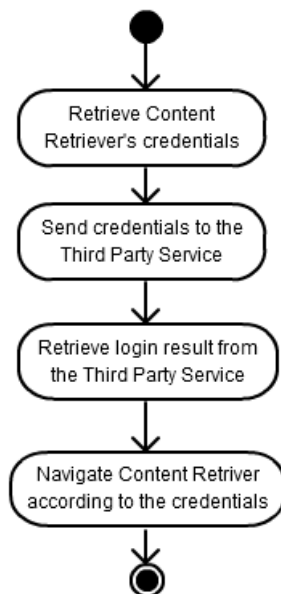
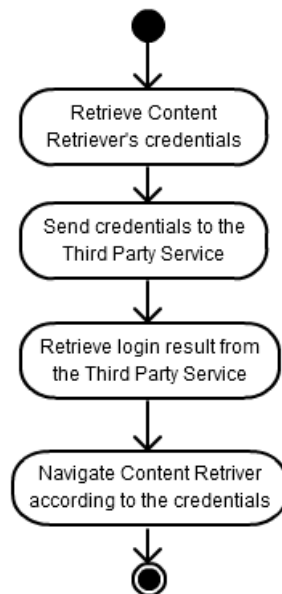


Figure 157: Activity Diagram for central login

## Use Case UCFR 55.2: Universal Login

<b>Use Case UC55.2</b>		Universal Login
<b>Description</b>		A login request and the login credentials, for the Third Party Service (Facebook, Google+), of the User are retrieved from platform and sent to the service.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. An account for the Content Retriever from the Third Party Service must exist.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever specifies required information for login (for example: username, password...).</li> <li>2. The Platform sends the credentials of the Content Retriever to the Third Party Service</li> <li>3. The Platform receives the result from the Third Party Service.</li> <li>4. The Platform navigates Content Retriever according to result received from the Third Party Service.</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever clicks on appropriate icon among the available Third Party Services
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 158: Activity Diagram for universal login**

## Use Case UCFR 55.3: Create Account for Users

<b>Use Case UC55.3</b>		Create Account for Users
<b>Description</b>		Accounts are created by administrators for the end-users
<b>Actors</b>		Administrator & Platform
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. An admin panel for the operation must exist.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. Account for the end-user is created
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Administrator logs in to the platform with his/her credentials.</li> <li>2. The Administrator navigates to the Admin Panel</li> <li>3. The Administrator sends a request to create an account</li> <li>4. The Platform creates an account</li> <li>5. The Administrator notifies the end-user and sends the necessary information.</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Administrator clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

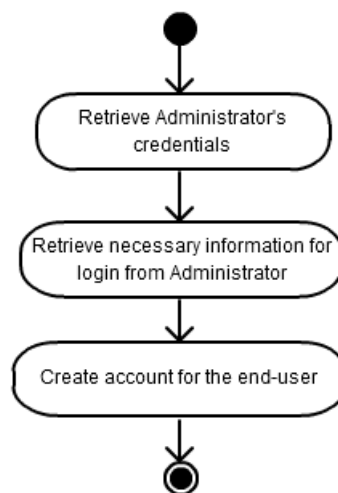


Figure 159: Activity Diagram for creating account for end-users



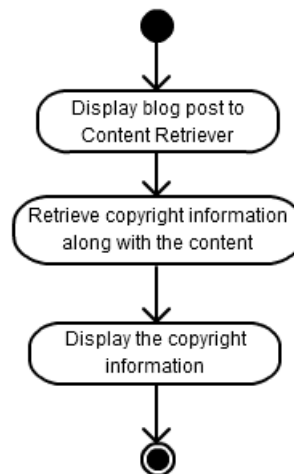
## 6.2 Data Requirements

### DR23 – Mashup Activities

<b>Requirement category</b>	Data Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Content from other sources should be identified and associated with a disclaimer around copyright infringement to protect the archive and hosting institution.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content provider, content retriever and administrator
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>4.3.2.2 Common Blog Authoring Practices</p> <p>For the case of mixing, quoting and reusing content from other sources, the results were that more than 30% of the survey participants rarely mixed, quoted or reused content from others and it was never done by 25% of the respondents (Table 11)</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can find the required disclaimer around copyright infringement easily.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCDR 23.1: Get Copyright Information

<b>Use Case UC23.1</b>		Get Copyright Information
<b>Description</b>		The Platform displays a disclaimer around copyright infringement
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. Copyright information has been received from the Spider
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. Display the Disclaimer around the copyright infringement
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on a link to the blog post.</li> <li>2. The Platform retrieves the copyright information from the database.</li> <li>3. The Platform displays the content along with the copyright information.</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on a link to the blog post
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 160: Activity Diagram for getting copyright information**

### 6.3 (End-)User Interface Requirements & Usability

## UI29 - Multiple Language Support

<b>Requirement category</b>	(End-)User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	It should be easy to switch the language of the archive to the users preference. Switching the language would localize all the menu items and explanatory texts within the archive platform.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content provider, content retriever and administrator
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>4.3.2.1 author survey respondents</p> <p>The survey identified that at least 5 languages were present amongst significant numbers of authors (5%+ to 43%), to be clear 67% of authors did not pick English as their preferred language. Similar language distributions exist in the reader results also.</p> <p>Therefore, the multi language support can enhance reader and provider adoption.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	The platform supports English and two other languages (e.g. German and Greek).
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango Docio</li> <li>• Hendrik Kalb</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 29.1: Change Language

<b>Use Case UC29.1</b>		Change Language
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to change language.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has changed the language
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever chooses the language from the available languages list 2. The Platform changes the language
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever's selection of the functionality
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

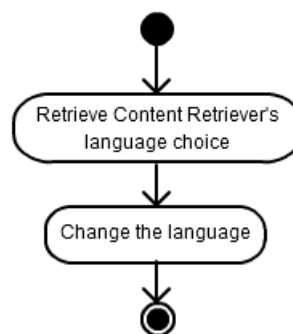


Figure 161: Activity diagram for changing the language

## UI30 - Creation of a Community of Providers and Recipients within the Archive Platform

<b>Requirement category</b>	(End)-User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>Archive users should be able to comment on blog posts and share these as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not share, keep private</li> <li>• Share to other archive users</li> </ul> <p>Sharing of comments builds an online community and thus works to deliver adoption. Also if the blog is no longer out in the world then the archive is the only place to comment</p> <p><i>Example use case: A historian researching archived political blogs might want to leave a comment for other historical researchers</i></p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content providers and content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>4.3.2.6 Aspect of blogs for preservation</p> <p>47.3% prefer a blog community within the archive; the same percentage showed interest about 'sharing and rating' tools; 32.6% presented interest about 'blog news portals'</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can find the blog archive community tools easily and these tools are popular and easy to use.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 30.1: Add comment

<b>Use Case UC30.1</b>		Add Comment
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to leave comments on a blog post
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has commented on a blog post
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever views a blog post</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever enters his/her comment on a box provided below the blog post.</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever clicks on the “Add Comment” button</li> <li>4. The Platform stores the comment</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever clicks on a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

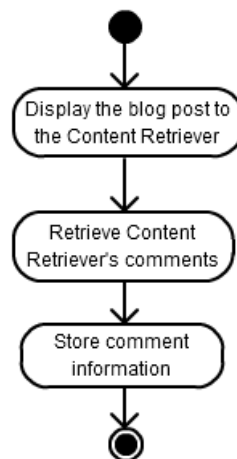
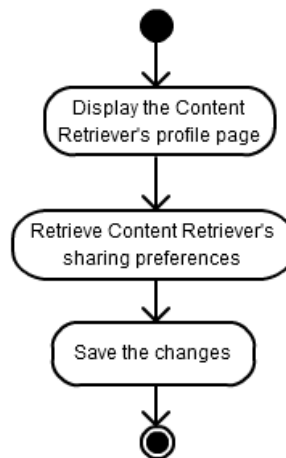


Figure 162: Activity Diagram for commenting on a blog post

## Use Case UCUI 24.2: Change Comment Sharing Preferences

<b>Use Case UC24.2</b>		Change Comment Sharing preference
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to change sharing visibility
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has changed sharing preferences
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever views his/her profile page</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever changes the default sharing preference</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever clicks on the “Save” button</li> <li>4. The Platform saves the changes to the database</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever’s selection of the functionality
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 163: Activity Diagram for changing sharing preferences**

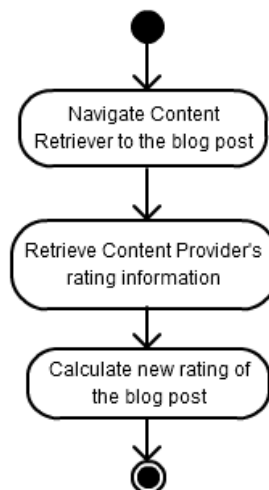
## UI31 – Ranking of Archived Posts

<b>Requirement category</b>	(End)-User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	<p>Within the archive users should be able to rate posts allowing a ranking or most popular/relevant blogs to be assembled within the archive. A voting system could be used in a similar way to popular Q&amp;A sites - like Stack Overflow and Quora - <a href="http://www.quora.com/StackOverflow">http://www.quora.com/StackOverflow</a> posts.</p>
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content providers and content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>4.3.2.4 Network-Based Metrics (Table 22)</p> <p>Ranking of posts has been identified in the survey as a key point of interest for users, with authors focusing upon comments, citations, WordPress stats and subscribers numbers as ways to justify engagement (Table 22 - ‘Ranking Analysis Tools’).</p> <p>A formal ranking system in addition to comments, citations etc. will provide a way to aid archive users in finding good content.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Users are able to rate and find good content in the archive easily
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>



## Use Case UCUI 31.1: Rate Post

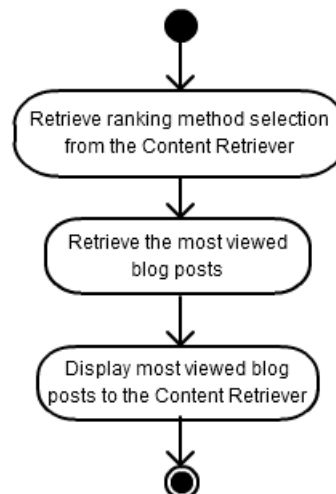
<b>Use Case UC31.1</b>		Rate Post
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to rate posts
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has rated the post.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever displays a blog post</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever rates the post.</li> <li>3. The Platform receives the rating and calculate rankings accordingly.</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		Content Retriever clicks on the symbols (stars, etc.) that represent points from 1 to 5 or 1 to 10
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 164: Activity Diagram for post rating.**

## Use Case UCUI 31.2: View Most Popular Posts

<b>Use Case UC31.2</b>		View Most Popular Posts
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to view most popular blog posts.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has viewed most popular posts
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects “Most Popular” option from the ranking methods list through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever clicks on “Search” button</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves most viewed blog posts</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the Most Popular Blog Posts</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks on “Search” button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



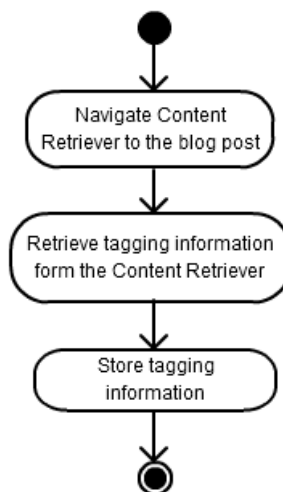
**Figure 165: Activity Diagram for getting most popular posts**

## UI32 – Tagging System

<b>Requirement category</b>	(End)-User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Within the archive users should be able to tag posts with their own metadata (in addition to any tagging metadata already associated with the original post). These tags should be visible to all users of the archive and could be used to group content together. They can also be used to drive advanced discovery features.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content providers and content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Appendix D – Readers Survey Data Summary</p> <p>Tagging of content combined with ranking can be used to aid search and also suggest good quality relevant posts based upon users profiles.</p> <p>Appendix D: Table 7 – Preferred Methods of Accessing a Blog Post – 39.7% access blog posts by category and 21.7% by tag to tag cloud.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	Users will be able to group and discover interesting content in an efficient way
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 32.1: Tag Post

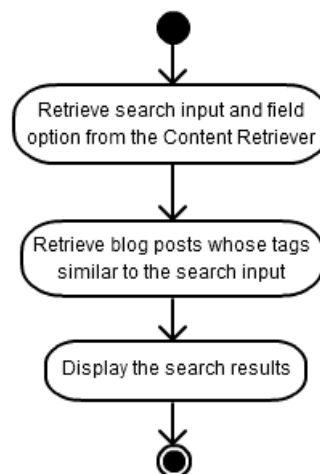
<b>Use Case UC32.1</b>		Tag Post
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to tag posts with their own metadata
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has tagged post.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever displays a blog post</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever enters necessary information into a box to tag the post</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever clicks on a button to add tagging information</li> <li>4. The Platform stores the tagging information</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks a button to add tags to the posts
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 166: Activity Diagram for post tagging**

## Use Case UCUI 32.2: Search Posts by Tags

<b>Use Case UC32.2</b>		Search Posts by Tags
<b>Description</b>		Users are allowed to search posts by tags in the Platform
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever retrieves search results.
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever selects the “tag” option from the field list through the Search Interface</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever fills in the search input</li> <li>3. The Platform retrieves posts according to the Content Retriever’s input</li> <li>4. The Platform displays the search results</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		UC UCUI 26.1
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever enters the keyword and clicks Search button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



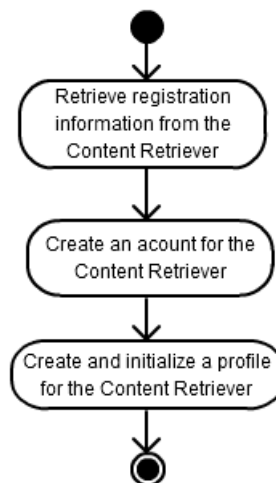
**Figure 167: Activity Diagram for searching posts by their tags**

## UI33 – User Profiles

<b>Requirement category</b>	(End)-User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Users should be encouraged to create user profiles. Logged in users can access saved articles and, based upon the tagging of the saved articles (see Req. 13) the archive can suggest other relevant content, in a similar way to ‘you might also be interested in’ feature in <a href="http://www.amazon.co.uk">www.amazon.co.uk</a> for example.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content retrievers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>Appendix D – Readers Survey Data Summary</p> <p>Appendix D: Table 11 - "Details of Blog Content Search" indicates that readers are most interested in content relevant to their own interests (72.9%)</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can find relevant content via their own profiles
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 33.1: Register

<b>Use Case UC33.1</b>		Register
<b>Description</b>		Users can be registered to the Platform
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has not been registered before
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. Account for the Content Retriever is created
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever clicks on a "Register" or "Sign Up" button.</li> <li>2. The Content Retriever fills in the necessary information</li> <li>3. The Platform creates account for the user</li> <li>4. The Platform creates and initializes a profile for the user</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks a button to register
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 168: Activity Diagram for registering**

## Use Case UCUI 33.2: Suggest Relevant Content

<b>Use Case UC33.2</b>		Suggest Relevant Content
<b>Description</b>		Platform suggests posts relevant to the post that the Content Retriever currently displays.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Platform has suggested relevant content
<b>Steps</b>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Content Retriever views a blog post.</li> <li>2. The Platforms displays a “Similar Posts“ link to the Content Retriever</li> <li>3. The Content Retriever clicks on the link</li> <li>4. The Platform retrieves a list of relevant posts by using a word similarity algorithm based upon the tagging information of the original post</li> <li>5. The Platform displays the list of relevant posts</li> </ol>
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever views a blog post.
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

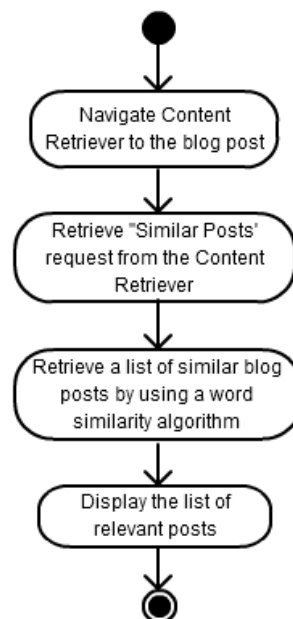


Figure 169: Activity Diagram for suggesting relevant content

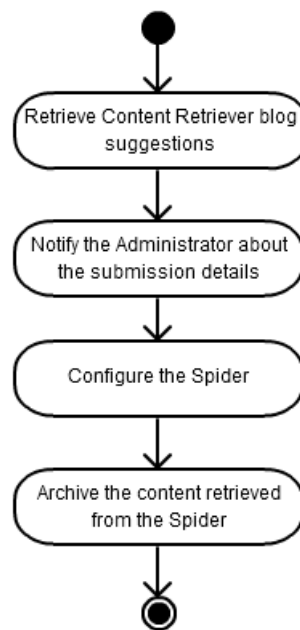


## UI34 – Simple Submission by Authors

<b>Requirement category</b>	(End-)User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Submission of content to an archive should be transparent and easy, i.e. complete a form and enter a URL for the spider to go to. The archive platform should notify the author of the submission and its status (new/under review/ pending approval...) and should be able to archive the blog with no further input from the author.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Content providers
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>4.3.2.6 Aspects of Blogs for Preservation (Table 27 - Use of external services for blog preservation)</p> <p>85.7 % of blog authors have never used a blog preservation service, so the barriers to submitting their content should be low. And if vetting is to occur then the rules around this should be clearly displayed on the site.</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can easily submit content in the archive
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UCUI 34.1 Submit Content

<b>Use Case UC34.1</b>		Submit Content
<b>Description</b>		Users are enabled to submit contents to be archived in the Platform.
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever & Administrator
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever is logged in.
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has submitted content
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever suggests blog pages through the Platform 2. The Platform notifies the Administrator about the submission details 3. UCFR 49.1 4. UCFR 48.1 5. UCFR 48.2
<b>Parent</b>		
<b>Trigger</b>		The Content Retriever clicks a button
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		



**Figure 170: Activity Diagram for content submission**

## UI35 – Workflow to Manage Blog Submissions

<b>Requirement category</b>	(End)-User Interface Requirement
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="radio"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	Once content is selected for an archive a workflow tool should be implemented to track the submission and deliver automatic messages as well as personal reminders about their progress. This workflow will allow content providers to obtain information about submission progress of their blog towards its permanent preservation.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	Administrators
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>4.3.2.6 Aspects of Blogs for Preservation (Table 27 - Use of external services for blog preservation)</p> <p>85.7 % of blog authors have never used a blog preservation service, so the barriers to submitting their content should be low</p>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	A user can easily submit content in the archive
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Silvia Arango-Docio</li> </ul>

## Use Case UC UCUI 35.1 Check Submission Status

<b>Use Case UC30.1</b>		Check Submission Status
<b>Description</b>		Users are enabled to track submission details on the system
<b>Actors</b>		Platform & Content Retriever
<b>Assumptions</b>	<b>Preconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has sent a content submission request
	<b>Postconditions</b>	1. The Content Retriever has submitted content.
<b>Steps</b>		1. The Content Retriever suggest blog pages to be aggregated 2. The Platform tracks for changes during the submission process 3. The Platform sends automatic messages to the Content Retriever about the submission progress.
<b>Parent</b>		UC UCUI 29.1
<b>Trigger</b>		A change in the submission status
<b>Variations</b>		
<b>Issues</b>		

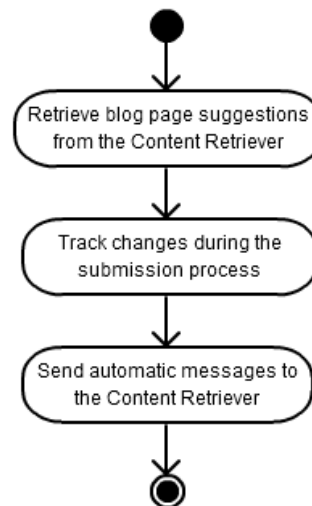


Figure 171: Activity Diagram for checking the submission status

## 7 Requirement Specifications by Topic

In this chapter, some requirements are ordered by different topics (only these requirements that fit to one of the topics). This provides another view that could facilitate a navigation through the requirements by topic interest, e.g. for system designers and developers. The topics are subjective and were created some of the developers who will implement the BlogForever preservation system. Hence, the topics do not claim to be generally valid. However, they could be also useful to other developers and, therefore, they are included in this public report.

Each topic starts with a description of the topic followed by the requirements that belong to this topic.

**Editing:** Requirements about editing and modifications to the blog content by the content providers themselves on the platform.

- FR1 – Deletion by the blog author

**Personalization:** Requirements concerning features offered to end users of the repository to personalize the way the use and experience the platform.

- FR2 – Capturing filter
- FR10 – Bookmarking for blog posts
- FR12 – Notification about changes in the archive
- FR20 – Favorite list of blogs and topics
- FR22 – Summaries/Journals about new archive content
- FR24 – User specific collections/projects
- FR28 – Recommend a cluster of blogs according to user preferences
- FR45 – Personalized filtering services
- UI3 – History of own activities in the archive
- UI12 – Annotations and highlighting
- UI13 – Customizable user dashboard
- UI25 – Filtered, personalized aggregation of content for end-users
- UI29 – Multiple language support
- UI33 – User profiles

**Statistics and analysis:** Requirements related to statistics and data analysis of the blog content.

- FR3 – Descriptive statistics for the archive
- FR5 – Descriptive statistics for a single blog or blog post
- FR18 – Analyze the network structure of blogs
- FR21 – Sentiments analysis on blog post level
- FR34 – Topic/Subject detection
- FR35 – Detection and ranking of the originality
- FR47 – Data integrity
- DR9 – Connections/Links
- DR15 – Visits of blogs and blog posts

**Output & export:** Requirements concerning the platform's export and output methods.

- FR4 – Blog export
- FR9 – Content Translation
- FR17 – Metadata for blogs
- EI1 – API for external clients to query data
- EI2 – Data access/export as XML
- EI4 – Accessible via search machines
- EI5 – Export as CSV
- EI6 – Export links between blog content
- IR3 – Export data using OAI-PMH protocol and Dublin Core schema
- IR4 – Expose parts of the archive via OAI-PMH based on specified criteria.
- IR5 – Connection with federated search engine dbwiz
- IR6 – Facilities to enable interoperability
- IR7 – OpenURL support
- IR8 – Digital Object Identifier
- SM3 – Data export for migration

**License:** Requirements about detecting, preserving and enforcing digital rights and authority information on the blog content.

- FR6 – Processing of Licenses
- FR39 – Digital Rights Management
- DR1 – Rights and Licenses
- DR3 – Disclaimer
- LR1 – Copyright laws
- LR2 – Privacy laws
- LR3 – Additional national laws
- LR4 – License of the content
- LR5 – Open source software license is preferable

**Searching, indexing & ranking:** Requirements related to the way blog content is searched, indexed and displayed in the platform.

- FR13 – Keyword/metadata search
- FR14 – Full-text search
- FR16 – Search by author
- FR26 – Context-sensitive search by keyword
- FR27 – Ranking of blogs and blog posts
- FR36 – Meme tracking and trend detection
- FR38 – Multidimensional indexing
- FR44 – Advanced searching
- DR16 – Search key words
- UI6 – Latest posts
- UI15 – Search interface
- UI18 – Search in external source

**Input & ingestion:** Requirements concerning the platform's input and ingestion methods.

- FR15 – Selection of blogs to archive
- FR32 – Add user suggested blogs to the archive
- FR41 – Retrieving semi-structured information
- FR48 – Crawler/Spider support platform flexibility
- FR49 – Support different versions of blogging software
- FR54 – What to archive: Text and comments
- IR2 – Capturing is possible for various platforms

**Community and social features:** Requirements about functionality that uses information about users (origin, language, feedback, what they like, what they read, etc.) and functionalities that use social networks to disseminate information about the archived blogs.

- FR7 – User dissemination channels for blog post
- FR11 – Recommendation System
- FR19 – Sharing and collaboration
- FR33 – Dissemination of newly archived items in external social platforms (ex. Twitter) in connection with author profiles
- DR10 – User Annotations
- DR20 – Blog comments from several source
- UI4 – Subscribe and navigate activities of other users
- UI20 – Display blogs that were read by people who have read a specific blog
- UI30 – Creation of a community of providers and recipients within the archive platform
- UI31 – Ranking of archived posts
- UI32 – Tagging system



**Display:** Requirements related to the way the platform displays content and information.

- FR8 – Topics (Categories) for blogs and blog posts
- FR37 – Web portal
- FR43 – Access to content in a harmonized way
- FR55 – Universal login & central login
- DR4 – Author of the blog, blog post, comment
- DR5 – Tags of the blog or blog post
- DR9 – Connections/Links
- DR11 – Differentiate between blog and blog post
- DR19 – Distinguish institutional/corporate blogs from personal blogs
- DR20 – Blog comments from several source
- UI1 – Web interface
- UI2 – Magazine/journal view
- UI5 – Citation is presented prominently
- UI7 – Tags for blogs and posts
- UI8 – Overview with metadata and summary
- UI9 – Network view on topics, blogs, posts, authors, etc.
- UI11 – historical/chronological view on a blog
- UI14 – User interface for mobiles
- UI16 – Easy to learn/Intuitive
- UI17 – Display references (links) to other sources inside or outside the archive
- UI19 – Display similar blogs and posts
- UI21 – Archived content is clearly stated as such
- UI22 – Density of displayed information
- UI23 – Categories/Topics are shown in different tabs
- UI24 – Display with only core information
- UI26 – Historical/Chronological view on blogs combined with corresponding statistics
- UI27 – Dynamic network view on topics, blogs, posts, etc.
- UI28 – Integration/Combination with other systems
- UI29 – Multiple language support
- UI31 – Ranking of archived posts
- UI32 – Tagging system
- UI34 – Simple submission by authors

**Administrative:** Requirements defining actions to be made in order to configure the system or to maintain the data quality.

- FR23 – Detection of duplicates
- FR25 – Paid access / Billing system
- FR29 – Detect and remove spam
- FR30 – Extract bibliographic metadata from blog contents
- FR31 – Define important blogs and filter junk
- FR47 – Data integrity
- DR2 – URI and metadata for referencing/citing
- DR18 – Remove private data of archive users
- UI10 – Available services depend on the content rights
- UI35 – Workflow to manage blog submissions
- EI3 – Pingback, Trackback
- IR1 – Single Sign On/Interoperates with Authentication System especially LDAP
- IR7 – OpenURL support
- IR8 – Digital Object Identifier
- RA1 – Recovery of the system
- RA2 – Correct information in the archive

**Metadata:** Requirements stating what kind of metadata should be extracted and stored in the platform about blogs and blog posts.

- DR6 – Metadata for captured content
- DR7 – Date/Timestamp for Creation and Capturing
- DR8 – Aggregators & Portals
- DR12 – Demographics
- DR13 – Comments
- DR14 – Embedded objects
- DR16 – Metadata for blogs
- DR22 – METS
- OP1 – Versioning
- OP2 – OAIS

**Ungrouped (Technical):** Requirements related to the purely technical aspects of the platform.

- Capacity and Scalability Requirements: CS\*
- Speed/Performance Requirements: PR\*
- RA3 – Application High Availability
- Storage and Persistence Requirements: SP\*
- Supportability and Maintainability Requirements: SM\*
- Security Requirements: SR\*

## 8 Requirement Specifications by Importance

Each requirement has been rated with an importance level. The levels essential, recommended, and optional indicate the importance for the interviewee or rather the stakeholder group. The importance levels should facilitate – together with an effort calculation – design decisions in the following project phases. Therefore, an additional view on the requirements is presented in this chapter that ordered the requirements by their level of importance.

### Essential Requirements:

From a stakeholder perspective, the software would not be acceptable unless these requirements are provided in an agreed manner.

FR1 – Deletion by the blog author	DR3 – Disclaimer
FR2 – Capturing filter	DR4 – Author of the blog, blog post, comment
FR6 – Processing of Licenses	DR7 – Date/Timestamp for Creation and Capturing
FR13 – Keyword/Metadata search	DR9 – Connections/Links
FR14 – Full-text search	DR11 – Differentiate between blog and blog post
FR15 – Selection of blogs to archive	DR13 – Comments
FR16 – Search by author	DR21 – Long term digital preservation
FR36 – Meme tracking and trend detection	DR22 – METS
FR37 – Web portal	UI1 – Web Interface
FR38 – Multidimensional indexing	UI5 – Citation is presented prominently
FR39 – Digital Rights Management	UI6 – Latest posts
FR40 – Billing system	UI7 – Tags for blogs and blog posts
FR41 – Retrieving semi-structured information	UI11 – Historical/Chronological view on a blog
FR42 – Weblog content validation and spam filtering	UI15 – Search interface
FR43 – Access to content in a harmonized way	UI16 – Easy to learn/Intuitive
FR44 – Advanced searching	CS1 – Amount of archived blogs
FR45 – Personalized filtering services	CS2 – Amount of blog posts per day
FR46 – Internationalization	CS3 – Amount of users
FR47 – Data integrity	CS4 – Clustering and high availability architectures
FR48 – Crawler/Spider Support Platform Flexibility	CS5 - Modularity
FR49 – Support Different Versions of Blogging Software	IR2 – Capturing is possible for various platforms
FR51 – UTF-8 – Default Character Encoding	IR3 – Export data using OAI-PMH protocol and Dublin Core schema
FR54 – What to archive: Text and comments	IR6 – Facilities to enable interoperability
DR1 – Rights and Licenses	IR7 – OpenURL support
DR2 – URI and metadata for referencing/citing	IR8 – Digital Object Identifier
	PR1 – Amount of blog posts to capture
	PR2 – Storage data concurrently
	PR3 – Real time archiving
	<b>continued on next page...</b>
RA2 – Correct information in the archive	

SP2 – Mechanisms to avoid data loss  
SM2 – Software updates  
OP1 – Versioning  
OP2 – OAIS  
OP3 – APIs for developers  
SR1 – Passwords are stored encrypted  
LR1 – Copyright laws  
LR2 – Privacy laws  
LR3 – Additional national laws  
LR4 – License of the content

### Recommended Requirements:

From a stakeholder perspective, these are requirements that would enhance the software product, but would not make it unacceptable if they are absent.

FR3 – Descriptive statistics for the archive	UI3 – History of own activities in the archive
FR4 – Blog export	UI4 – Subscribe and Navigate activities of other users
FR5 – Descriptive statistics for a single blog or blog post	UI8 – Overview with metadata and summary
FR7 – User dissemination channels for blog post	UI9 – Network view on topics, blogs, posts, authors, etc.
FR8 – Topics (Categories) for blogs and blog posts	UI10 – Available services depend on the content rights
FR10 – Bookmarking of blog posts	UI12 – Annotations and Highlighting
FR11 – Recommendation system	UI13 – Customizable user dashboard
FR12 – Notification about changes in the archive	UI17 – Display references (links) to other sources inside or outside the archive
FR17 – Print/Export as PDF, JPEG, etc.	UI19 – Display similar blogs and posts
FR18 – Analyze the network structure of blogs	UI20 – Display blogs that were read by people who have read a specific blog
FR20 – Favorite list of blogs and topics	UI21 – Archived content is clearly stated as such
FR22 – Summaries/Journals about new archive content	UI22 – Density of displayed information
FR23 – Detection of duplicates	UI23 – Categories/Topics are shown in different tabs
FR26 – Context-sensitive search by keyword	UI24 – Display with only core information
FR27 – Ranking of blogs and blog posts	UI27 – Dynamic network view on topics, blogs, posts, etc.
FR28 – Recommend a cluster of blogs according to user preferences	UI29 – Multiple language support
FR29 – Detect and remove spam	UI30 – Creation of a community of providers and recipients within the archive platform
FR30 – Extract bibliographic metadata from blog contents	UI31 – Ranking of archived posts
FR32 – Add user suggested blogs to the archive	UI32 – Tagging system
FR50 – Most important content type (Text/Html)	UI33 – User profiles
DR5 – Tags of the blog or blog post	UI34 – Simple submission by authors
DR6 – Metadata for captured contents	UI35 – Workflow to manage blog submissions
DR8 – Aggregators & Portals	EI1 – API for external clients to query data
DR10 – User Annotations	EI2 – Data access/export as XML
DR14 – Embedded objects	EI3 – Pingback, Trackback
DR15 – Visits of blogs and blog posts	EI4 – Accessible via search machines
DR16 – Search key words	EI5 – Export as CSV
DR17 – Metadata for blogs	EI6 – Export links between blog content
DR18 – Remove private data of archive users	IR1 – Single Sign On/Interoperates with Authentication System especially LDAP
DR20 – Blog comments from several source	IR4 – Expose parts of the archive via OAI-PMH based on specified criteria.
DR23 – Mashup activities	
UI2 – Magazine/Journal view	

**continued on next page...**

IR5 – Connection with federated search engine dbwiz  
RA3 – Application High Availability  
SP1 – Support for different SQL–data bases  
SM1 – Migration/Updating without down time  
SM3 – Data export for migration  
SR2 – Access restricted to IP–range  
LR5 – Open source software license is preferable

### Optional Requirements:

From the stakeholder perspective, the following requirements represent a class of functions that may or may not be worthwhile. This gives the supplier the opportunity to propose something that exceeds the SRS.

FR9 – Content translation	DR12 – Demographics
FR19 – Sharing and collaboration	DR19 – Distinguish institutional/corporate blogs from personal blogs
FR21 – Sentiments analysis on blog post level	UI14 – User interface for mobiles
FR24 – User specific collections/projects	UI17 – Display references (links) to other sources inside or outside the archive
FR25 – Paid access/Billing system	UI18 – Search in external sources
FR31 – Define important blogs and filter junk	UI25 – Filtered, personalized aggregation of content for end–users
FR33 – Dissemination of newly archived items in external social platforms (ex. Twitter) in connection with author profiles	UI26 – Historical/Chronological view on blogs combined with corresponding statistics
FR34 – Topic/Subject detection	UI28 – Integration/Combination with other systems
FR35 – Detection and ranking of the originality	RA1 – Recovery of the system
FR52 – Sharing and promotion beyond the archive	
FR53 – Snapshots versions of blog designs in the archive	
FR55 – Universal login & central login	

## 9 Conclusion

This report specifies requirements for the BlogForever blog aggregation, preservation, management and dissemination platform. The specifications are based on existing data and documents as well as qualitative data captured in 26 semi-structured interviews.

Overall, 153 requirements are described above. Thereby, 114 requirements were identified through interviews. For the interview conduction, eight relevant stakeholder groups were identified. Thereby, blog authors are the most important group because it is crucial that they agree in the archiving of their content. Therefore, the group of blog authors is higher represented in the sample of the 26 interviewees.

Different project members conducted the interviews in several languages (e.g. English, Greek, German). Thus, perspectives are probably less biased by national or cultural characteristics. The interviewers were unequally experienced in performing interviews. Hence, a comprehensive interviewer guide was developed and provided for the interviewers. The included interview schedule consists of questions that were adjusted to the particular stakeholder group.

Due to the different interview languages, the interview transcripts were analysed by several project members. The analysis followed an explorative and incremental process. The requirements were described in a standardised template to ensure a common understanding by the analysts and to facilitate later exploration and usage by developers. The resulting requirements from the different analysts were integrated in a collaborative process. Additionally, the requirements were modelled in the unified modelling language (UML) based on the verbal descriptions to further enhance the usability for developers (e.g. in the design phase).

Next to the requirements from the interviews, 23 requirements were collected from the description of work and 16 from the deliverable D2.1 Weblogs Survey Report. They were also described in the standardised template and modelled with UML.

The initial descriptions and models of the requirements are ordered in requirement categories, which were already used for developing interview questions and analysing the interviews. Furthermore, two views are provided that facilitate exploration and one view structures the requirements with regard to different topics of the software. Thereby, the requirements in a topic are connected or interdependent, e.g. they could share a common purpose like searching. Thus, the creation of project or focus groups, which would further work on the requirements of a topic, is facilitated.

The second view ordered the requirements by their importance for the users/stakeholders. Thus, decision processes about the implementation are better supported. For example, the estimation of implementation effort could be focussed in a first step on essential requirements.

Overall, a comprehensive list of requirements has been created. As opposed to a contractual requirements specification, this list should not be understood as a mandatory guideline for assessing the implemented system. Due to the explorative and innovative character of the project, it is rather a broad and deep insight in the examined area of blog preservation. Thus, it should facilitate further focusing on project aims and guide to successful case studies and prototypes. The latter will be used to identify new or still overseen demands.



## 10 Acknowledgements

Many thanks to the 26 interviewees who voluntarily spend their time and provided their knowledge and experiences in the interviews. Additionally, many thanks for the contributions of all the interviewers, transcribers, and analysts that gave us the possibility of an international survey.

Special thank to Stephen Downes who provided interesting insights in the perspective of a long time blog author. The full transcription of his interview can be found on his blog: <http://halfanhour.blogspot.com/2011/11/this-is-interview-conducted-by-karen.html>.

Furthermore, special thank to Carolyn Hank who supported us with her methodical knowledge.

## 11 References

- Anon., 2005. *Data Requirement*. [Online] Available at: <http://www.opfro.org/index.html?Components/WorkProducts/RequirementsSet/Requirements/DataRequirements.html~Contents> [Accessed 22 September 2011].
- Fitzner, D., 2010. *D8.1 Requirements specification of the TELEIOS User Community*. Fraunhofer IGD.
- Freeman, R.E. & Reed, D.L., 1983. Stockholders and stakeholders: A new perspective on corporate governance. *California Management Review*, 25(3), pp.88-106.
- Glaser, B.G. & Strauss, A.L., 1967. *The discovery of grounded theory: Strategies for qualitative research*. New Brunswick (USA) and London (UK): AldineTransaction.
- IEEE Computer Society, 2009. *IEEE Recommended Practice for Software Requirements Specifications*. IEEE Std 830™-1998 (R2009). New York, NY: Software Engineering Standards Committee.
- McEwen, S., 2004. *Requirements: An introduction*. [Online] Available at: <http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/rational/library/4166.html> [Accessed 22 September 2011].
- Mitchel, R.K., Agle, B.R. & Wood, D.J., 1997. Toward a theory of stakeholder identification and salience: Defining the principle of who and what really counts. *Academy of Management Review*, 22(4), pp.853-86.
- The Open Group, 2009. *Interoperability Requirements*. [Online] Available at: <http://pubs.opengroup.org/architecture/togaf9-doc/arch/chap29.html> [Accessed 22 September 2011].

## A. Appendix A – Interviewer Guides

The following chapters contain the components of the six interviewer guides.

### A.1 Pre-Test Instructions for Interviewers

Conduct at least one pre-test interview to ensure that

- The interviewer has fully understood the interview questions and can explain the questions to the interviewee,
- The interviewer is familiar with the schedule of the interview, and
- There are not any technical problems with the recordings.

The pre-test interview can be done with a colleague, friend or any other person but the circumstances of the interview should be as realistic as possible. Therefore, use the same technology (e.g. Skype) that you will use in the interview.

Take notes for any problem that occurs! Report the problems to Hendrik (email<sup>5</sup>), Nikos (email5) or Jaime (email5) to get clarification.

Reporting of problems will help us as well to avoid the same problems for other interviewers. Thanks.

---

<sup>5</sup>Email-address was made anonymously for this report.

## A.2 Interview instruction and assistance

**In the following, we give some instructions and assistance to conduct a proper interview. Read it carefully BEFORE the interview!**

The interview questions are provided in English but you should do the interview in the language that is most familiar to the interviewee and you. Therefore, you may have to translate the questions into your language. Ask Hendrik (email5), Nikos (email5) or Jaime (email5) for help if you have any problems to translate the sense of the questions.

How should you lead the interview?

- The interviewee should do the most of the talking. Therefore, interrupt the interviewee only if you feel that the talk goes into a topic that is not relevant to the interview purposes!
- Respect the interviewee's pace and do not be afraid of pauses or silences!
- Keep the interview focused on the topics of the questions previously defined!
- Ask for more clarification or elaboration if you feel that the interviewee could tell you more on a topic.
- Also, allow the interviewee to ask questions, as well, if more clarification is needed. Respond to the interviewee's questions, confirming that your response was satisfactory (e.g., is that what you had in mind? Or, was that helpful? Or, did that answer your question?)
- Pay attention to the language you use, avoiding jargon or terms the interviewees may not be familiar with. You should adopt the interviewee's worldview, rather than expect the interviewee to adopt yours.
- Keep an eye on the time limits for questions!
- Remember your objectives throughout the interview. While an interview may mimic a natural conversation, it is not. It is a strategic and deliberate data collection strategy.
- Be authentic, acting relaxed and natural. Even though you have practiced the schedule, do not give the interviewee the impression you are reading from a script. Ask your questions in such a way that each seems a natural extension of the one preceding it, and as if the question just came to you rather than having been vetted and prepared and practices well in advance of the interview.
- Be an engaged, authentic listener. Just don't simply leap into the next question once the interviewee has responded to the preceding one. Present yourself as being aware, interested and attentive to what is being said. You might say, "Oh, that is really interesting," or, "Thanks for that detailed response," before moving on to the next question."
- Interview in a comfortable, private place and one where you will be free from distractions and interruptions. If conducting the interview from work, consider hanging a sign on your door, "interview in progress" so people don't knock or pop their heads in your office. If conducting the interview from home, stay clear of barking dogs (if a pet owner) and keep the TV or radio off.
- Be respectful, appreciative and kind.

How should you ask to get more information for a topic?

- Avoid suggesting any answers! (e.g. "I assume that you do it in that way....")

- Ask open questions! Avoid closed questions (e.g. Yes/No questions)!
- If an interviewee provides a Yes/No response, prompt them to give a more detailed answer through using probing questions (e.g., Thanks for your reply; could you tell me a little about why you responded [yes/no]?” Or, “How come?”).
- Ask clear and direct questions such as How? Where? When? Who? What? Why? How much? How many?

What are the steps of your interview?

1. Read the consent script to the interviewee to inform her/him about the interview and to get her/his consent for recording the interview!
2. Start the recording! (And do a test of the equipment. This relaxes both parties and ensures that you get a good recording.)
3. Ask the questions of the interview schedule! You should make every attempt to ask every question on the schedule. You can improvise slightly, using prompts, as necessary, to try to solicit a response. However, the interviewee may not want to answer every question. That’s okay. You can skip a question and move on to the next one.
4. Try to stick to the order of the questions on the schedule. However, if from the interviewee’s responses you think the interview would be better served by changing the flow of questions, you may do so. For example, the interviewee may raise a point that you will come back to in a question scheduled to be asked later in the interview. When appropriate (that is, when it works with rather than impedes the flow of the interview) you may reorder the questions during the interview. However, this should be done sparingly and only when appropriate.
5. When you have completed the schedule, ask the interviewee if s/he have any questions for you. If so, respond. After answering, ask if they have any more questions. Confirm they have no more questions before you conclude the interview. If no more questions (or if no questions to start with), let them know the interview is over (e.g., “that concludes the interview”).
6. Before ending the interview, be sure to thank the interviewee for her/his participation! Don’t just simply say thanks and hang up. Let them know you appreciate them taking time out of their day to talk with you and that you value their contributions to the research study.
7. Store the recording in a safe place!
8. Fill the interview debriefing sheet!
9. Inform Hendrik (email<sup>6</sup>), Nikos (email<sup>6</sup>) or Jaime (email<sup>6</sup>) that the interview is done.

---

<sup>6</sup>Email-address was made anonymously for this report.

### A.3 Consent script

Each interviewee has to be informed about the interview conditions and has to declare her/his consent.

Hello [Name of the Interviewee], it's [Name of the Interviewer], calling for our scheduled phone interview. How are you today? **(Wait for reply)**.

Good to hear. Before we begin, I first wanted to thank you for agreeing to participate in this important interview. Also, I have a prepared consent script as I will need to get your consent to go forward with the interview. May I read you the consent script now? **(Wait for reply)**.

Thank you. As you may already know, I am member of the EU-funded project BlogForever. In the project, we aim on the development of an archiving and preservation system for weblogs. We would like to address various needs and therefore, we investigating different perspectives with questionnaires, interviews and other research methods.

This interview will last approximately 30 minutes. Your participation in this interview is completely voluntary. This means that you do not have to participate in this interview unless you want to. You don't have to answer any question that you choose not to answer. We will just skip that question and go on to the next one.

I or any other member of the BlogForever team will not identify you, your blog, or your institution, or use any information you share during the interview that would make it possible for anyone to identify you in any presentation or written report about this study. I will not even record your name with your responses. If it is okay with you, I might want to use direct quotes from you, but these would only be quoted as coming from a person of a certain label or title, like "one blogger from Germany."

There are no other expected risks to you for helping us with this study. There is no financial benefit for your participation. The cost to participate is your time, and for that I am very appreciative.

We offer you that we will send you the results of our study when finalized. To make sure that your email address will not be related to this interview, you can write an email to *email*<sup>7</sup> or to *email*<sup>7</sup> to announce your interest in the results. Alternatively, you can give your email address to me and I will inform them to send you the results. I will not store your email address related to this interview.

I would like to record this interview. The digital recording will be maintained by me, with only access by BlogForever project members who are involved in the analysis of the interviews. The recording will be permanently deleted after completion of our analysis. Further, if a transcript is made, in no way will your name be associated with the transcript. Any identifying personal information received in the course of this interview will be de-identified. If a transcript of our interview is produced, only BlogForever project members who are involved in the analysis of the interviews will have access to the transcript.

Lastly, you may contact as well the management of the BlogForever project, anonymously if you wish, with any questions or concerns,

---

<sup>7</sup> Email-address was made anonymously for this report.

Thank you. At this point, do you have any questions for me? [**Respond to any inquiries**].

Do I have your permission to begin recording and asking you questions? (**If yes, continue**)

**If No:** We can still complete the interview even if I cannot record you. Do you give me permission to take notes during our interview? These notes may include direct quotes from you. Again, in no way will these notes be associated with you in any way when reporting findings from this study. (**If yes, continue**)

**If No to Note-Taking:** Thank you. I very much appreciate the time you took to talk with me today and for your past participation in the study. This ends the interview. At this point, can I answer any questions for you? [**Respond to any inquiries**]. Again, thank you for your time. [**End call**].

## A.4 Interview Schedule – Content Provider – Blog author

### Part A) (approx. 5 min)

1. Give a brief description of BlogForever and clearly state to the interviewee the purpose of the interview

Question	Hints for the Interviewer
<p>First, we would like to understand your background. This will help us to understand the context of your answers.</p> <p>1. Could you please tell us a bit about your blogging experiences and why are you blogging?</p>	<p>It should be covered at least</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how long,</li> <li>• how often,</li> <li>• about what,</li> <li>• to whom.</li> </ul>

### Part B)

Mandatory Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
2. How do you facilitate or prevent that your blog will be found by other people	e.g. the use specific key words, tags, dissemination activities
3. Who has the right to do what with your blog content or any data from blog? How do you indicate and control the rights for your content?	e.g. common creative license, DRM
<p>4. How interested are you in the possible interconnections between your blog and others?</p> <p>Follow up questions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In what way?</li> <li>• How would you imagine a system supporting this feature?</li> </ul>	The follow up questions should be used if they are not already covered by the answer to the main question.
5. In a platform where you browse and search for blogs and the relations between them what would make the user interface comfortable and intuitive? Give us a couple of examples.	The question aims on User interfaces and Look & Feel
<p>6. How interested are you in how your blog is ranked among blogs for the different subjects and how do you check that?</p> <p>7. By what other criteria would you like to see your blog ranked?</p>	The blogger might be interested in specific fields on which to rank their blog by.
<p>8. What would you like to know about your visitors or other analysis of your blog? For example: statistics (popularity, visits, etc.), keywords or sentiments.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• And why?</li> </ul>	Analysis of part of the blog to extract keywords, sentiment, etc. What would be extracted? Why?



<p>9. How do you archive or backing up your blog(s)?</p> <p><b>If yes:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Describe the process of archiving or backing up the blog(s) you are authoring.</li> <li>Describe the process of accessing or restoring information from your archive.</li> <li>Can you identify any problems/issues with the procedures you are currently following?</li> </ol> <p><b>If no:</b></p> <p>10. What is keeping you from archiving your blog(s)? Please elaborate!</p> <p>Possible follow up question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Are there any constraints (e.g. technical) or you just didn't care about it?</li> </ul>	
<p>11. If there was a real time, continuous and viewable archive of your blog, how would you use it? What would it look like?</p>	<p>The respondent might talk about desired functions or visual requirements.</p>
<p>12. If there would be a preservation or archiving system for blogs how would you like to control which of your content is captured and stored?</p> <p>Follow up questions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Would you like to be notified and if yes, how?</li> <li>How would you like to indicate that content should be removed from the preservation system?</li> </ul>	<p>The follow up questions should be used if they are not already covered by the answer to the main question.</p>

Optional Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
<p>13. How do you facilitate or prevent technically that your blog will be found and disseminated by search engines?</p>	<p>The blogger can use for example special code in the html of the blog to make it discoverable, or they can list it in blog directories, etc.</p>
<p>14. How do you facilitate the readers of your blog that they find related posts inside your blog?</p>	<p>Try to figure out how the blogger approaches e.g.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tags: How do decide which tags are used? When do you use new tags and do you re-tag you older posts?</li> <li>Categories: How do you developed the categories? How often and why do you change the categories?</li> </ul>

15. If there would be a preservation or archiving system for blogs and if there would be a special access or interface for blog authors how should it work?	
16. What other general comments do you have on the development of a blog aggregation, preservation, and management & dissemination software?	

## A.5 Interview Schedule – Content Provider – Organisation

### *Part A) (approx. 5 min)*

1. Give a brief description of BlogForever and clearly state to the interviewee the purpose of the interview

Question	Hints for the Interviewer
First, we would like to understand your background. This will help us to understand the context of your answers.  1. Could you please tell us about your position in your organization?	
2. What are the main services or products that your organization offers to whom and how are they represented in your blogs?	
3. Could you please tell us about your experiences with blogs (professional or private)?	It should be covered at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how many years</li> <li>• how often</li> <li>• are they only using them for their company</li> </ul>

### *Part B)*

Mandatory Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
4. How do you facilitate the dissemination of the blogs in your organisation?  5. Is there a difference how you disseminate them inside the organization or to the public? Please elaborate.	There could be organisational as well as technical aspects. In case of technical aspects, listing them will suffice.
6. What recommendations or constraints do you have for the appearance or the layout of the blogs in your organisation?  Follow up question: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How do you control it and how would that affect a blog archiving service in your institution?</li> </ul>	e.g. corporate identity
7. How do you control the content in the blogs to avoid inappropriate or illegal behaviour?  Follow up question: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have you ever had to remove content from an already posted blog post (or the whole blog) and how did you do it?</li> </ul>	

<p>8. What are you interested in the discussions and comments happening in your blogs?</p> <p>Follow up question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Would you like to aggregate, manage &amp; analyse all your users' feedback? Please describe an ideal scenario.</li> </ul>	
<p>9. How do you archive or backing up the blogs of your organisation?</p> <p><b>If yes:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Describe the process of archiving or backing up the blogs?</li> <li>Describe the process of accessing or restoring information from your archive?</li> <li>Did you ever need to search, filter, export or migrate archived blogs? How did you do it?</li> <li>Can you identify any problems/issues with the procedures you are currently following?</li> </ol> <p><b>If no:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Why don't you use a special software capable of aggregating, archiving &amp; managing all your blogs?</li> </ol> <p>Follow up question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What are important aspects that such software has to fulfil?</li> </ul>	
<p>10. If there was a real time, continuous and viewable archive of your blog, how would you use it?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What would it look like?</li> </ul>	<p>The respondent might talk about desired functions or visual requirements.</p>
<p>11. How interested are you in possible interconnections between your blog and others?</p> <p>Follow up question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In what way?</li> <li>• How would you imagine a system supporting this feature?</li> </ul>	<p>Blog relations might include the use of semantics to indicate these relations. If needed, record the type of semantics used / desired.</p>
<p>12. Would you be interested in an analysis of your blog (or part of your blog) to extract for example: statistics (popularity, visits, etc.), keywords, and sentiments and why?</p>	<p>Analysis of part of the blog to extract keywords, sentiment, etc. What would be extracted? Why?</p>

Optional Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
13. What would you describe as a “killer” application feature for a blog archiving service?	
14. Do you have any general comments on the development of a blog aggregation, preservation, and management & dissemination software?	

## A.6 Interview Schedule – Content Retriever – Blog Reader

### Part A) (approx. 5 min)

1. Give a brief description of BlogForever and clearly state to the interviewee the purpose of the interview

Question	Hints for the Interviewer
First, we would like to understand your background. This will help us to understand the context of your answers.  1. Could you please tell us a bit about your experiences with blogs and why do you read blogs?	It should be covered at least <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how long,</li> <li>• how often,</li> <li>• about what,</li> <li>• why.</li> </ul>
2. Do you favour the information in blogs over the information from other websites?  <b>If yes:</b> Why? <b>If no:</b> Why not?	Short explanation is sufficient.

### Part B)

Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
3. What ways are you using to access blogs today? Follow up questions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How do you explore relationships between blogs, blog posts or bloggers?</li> <li>• What do you miss for your exploring or reading activities?</li> <li>• Do you use any blog aggregators or blog search machines?</li> </ul> <b>If yes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What do you use or like on this platforms?</li> <li>• What do you miss?</li> </ul>	
4. What personal list(s) of blogs or topics are you monitoring?  <b>If yes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How are you managing it?</li> <li>• How do you discover new blogs or topics for that list?</li> </ul>	
5. Do you follow entire blogs or choose the specific	

<p>content you are interested in and why?</p> <p>Follow up questions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How would you filter such content?</li> <li>• How do you imagine such a feature?</li> </ul>	
<p>6. How are you archiving blog content you find useful, important or interesting?</p> <p>Follow up questions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How are you browsing, searching &amp; accessing archived information?</li> </ul>	
<p>7. If there would be a preservation or archiving system for blogs what benefits would you expect by exploring such system instead of the original blog?</p> <p>Follow up questions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How would you explore it?</li> <li>• How would you like to be informed about updates in such a system?</li> </ul>	
<p>8. If there would be a preservation or archiving system for blogs where you browse and search for blogs and the relations between them what would make the user interface comfortable and intuitive? Give us some examples.</p>	<p>The question aims on User interface and Look &amp; Feel.</p>
<p>9. How would you browse or retrieve blogs by ranking?</p> <p><b>If yes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What ranking criteria would you like to use?</li> <li>• Which ranking methods do you know and which would you prefer?</li> </ul>	
<p>10. How would you use sub categorized clusters to browse or search the blogs in a thematic archive?</p>	

## A.7 Interview Schedule – Content Retriever – Libraries

### Part A) (approx. 5 min)

1. Give a brief description of BlogForever and clearly state to the interviewee the purpose of the interview

Question	Hints for the Interviewer
First, we would like to understand your background. This will help us to understand the context of your answers.  1. Could you please tell us about your position in your organization?	
2. What are the main services or products that your organization offers to whom?	
3. Could you please tell us about your experiences with blogs (professional or private)?	It should be covered at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how many years</li> <li>• how often</li> <li>• for what purpose</li> </ul>

### Part B)

Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
<p>4. How are you collecting and using blog content for the benefit of your audience?</p> <p><b>If yes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. How are you doing it? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. How do you choose what to collect?</li> <li>ii. How do you keep that content?</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. What access, search, sort or retrieval facilities do you provide to your audience?</li> <li>g. Can you identify any problems or issues with the procedures you are currently following?</li> <li>h. Can you identify any best practices or success stories regarding your blogs collection?</li> </ul> <p><b>If no:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Would you use a special software capable of aggregating, archiving &amp; managing blogs of your academic interest?</li> </ul> <p>Follow up question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What would be the important aspects that such</li> </ul>	



software would have to fulfil?	
<p>5. How do you integrate external repositories with digital content into your services?</p> <p>Follow up question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What are the challenges for such integration?</li> </ul>	<p>E.g. standards, protocols, necessary meta data, interface, etc.</p> <p>A list of technologies will suffice</p>
<p>6. What legal challenges do you face when you access or integrate external content and provide it to your users?</p>	
<p>7. When you consider integrating an external repository into your services, how do you assess or control the quality and performance of the external repository?</p>	
<p>8. What kind of access restriction policy do you apply to your users?</p>	<p>e.g. blocking off-campus IP address, LDAP authentication, etc.</p> <p>A list of technologies will suffice</p>
<p>9. What personalized services do you provide to your users and what do they prefer?</p>	<p>e.g. custom searches, bookmarks, alerts, etc.</p>
<p>10. If there would be a preservation or archiving system for blogs what ways would you use to access and retrieve content from such a platform?</p> <p>Follow up question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do you have preference in specific schemas? What schema and why?</li> </ul>	

## A.8 Interview Schedule – Content Retriever – Businesses

### Part A) (approx. 5 min)

1. Give a brief description of BlogForever and clearly state to the interviewee the purpose of the interview

Question	Hints for the Interviewer
First, we would like to understand your background. This will help us to understand the context of your answers.  1. Could you please tell us about your position in your organization?	
2. What are the main services or products that your business offers to whom?	
3. Could you please tell us about your experiences with blogs (professional or private)?	It should be covered at least: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how many years</li> <li>• how often</li> <li>• for what purpose</li> </ul>

### Part B)

Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
<p>4. How are you collecting and using blog content for the benefit of your clients?</p> <p><b>If yes:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Why and how are you doing it? <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>iii. How do you choose what to collect?</li> <li>iv. How do you keep that content?</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. What access, search, sort or retrieval facilities do you provide to your audience?</li> <li>c. Can you identify any problems or issues with the procedures you are currently following?</li> <li>d. Can you identify any best practices or success stories regarding blogs of your business interest?</li> <li>e. Could you please estimate how many blogs and how often you collect (at present and in the future)? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What technical challenges does this imply?</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Is there one or more persons in your company, a service or both responsible of collecting, managing</li> </ol>	<p>Question “If yes: ... e.” aims on requirements for capacity and scalability.</p>

<p>and analysing the blog contents?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you should classify them as simple users or techies, how would you describe them and why?</li> </ul> <p><b>If no:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Would you use a special software capable of aggregating, archiving &amp; managing blogs of your business interest?</li> <li>What blogs do you plan to collect and why?</li> <li>Could you please estimate how many blogs and how often you would collect? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>What technical challenges does this imply?</li> </ul> </li> <li>What parts of the blog content analysis would you focus on?</li> <li>How do you feel your clients could benefit from such a platform?</li> </ol>	<p>Question “If no: ... c.” aims on requirements for capacity and scalability.</p>
5. What legal challenges do you face when you access or integrate external content and provide it to your users?	
6. What kind of access restriction policy do you apply to your users?	<p>e.g. blocking off-company IP address, LDAP authentication, etc.</p> <p>A list of technologies will suffice.</p>
For the following questions, assume that there would be a software or system capable of aggregating, archiving & managing blogs...	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>What federated search service do you have in your organization?</li> <li>What kind of protocols and standards would be required to ensure interoperability with such system?</li> </ol>	<p>Federated search is an information retrieval technology that allows the simultaneous search of multiple searchable resources.</p> <p>Listing of protocols and standards suffices.</p>
9. Would you be interested in monitoring blogs covering specific topics? Please elaborate.	
10. What personalized services would you or do you offer your users and clients and why?	e.g. custom searches, bookmarks, alerts, etc.
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Would you offer a different interface and functionality to your users within the company and your business clients? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>What are the main aspects in which they would differ?</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	
12. Would you be interested in offering paid services to your	

end users and how would you envision such a system?	
13. How would you offer access or provide information to your end users in such a platform?	e.g. web interface, periodical e-mail digest, etc.

## A.9 Interview Schedule – Content Retriever – Researcher

### Part A) (approx. 5 min)

1. Give a brief description of BlogForever and clearly state to the interviewee the purpose of the interview

Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
First, we would like to understand your background. This will help us to understand the context of your answers.  1. Could you please tell us a bit about your research especially in relation to blogs or social media?	It should be covered at least <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how long,</li> <li>• about what,</li> </ul>
2. Do you blog or read blogs?  <b>If yes:</b> Why?  <b>If no:</b> Why not?	Short explanation is sufficient.

**!!! Note for the interviewer: If the interviewee does not research about blogs or social media, proceed with the questions for blog readers or blog authors!!!**

### Part B)

Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
3. How are you collecting information from blogs for your research?  <b>If yes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Describe the purpose and the processes you are following?</li> </ul>	Ask the questions for social media instead of blogs if the researcher research about other social media than blogs.
4. What search functionalities, aggregation or analysis have you used to get a proper sample of blogs for your research?  Follow up question: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How was it supported by software and how could it be better supported?</li> </ul>	
5. How are you managing, searching, retrieving & analysing the collected blog information? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Can you identify any problems or issues with the procedures you are currently following?</li> <li>• Can you identify any benefits or best practices with the procedures you are currently following?</li> </ul>	
6. What if there was an online service containing blogs relevant to your research topic. What would you use it for and what should it provide that you could use it efficiently?	

<p>7. Would you install a special software capable of aggregating, archiving &amp; managing blogs relevant to your research?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• For what purpose?</li></ul>	
<p>8. If you would use the software to research collaboratively with other researchers how would you use it?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• What should the software or platform offer to facilitate collaborative research on blogs?</li></ul>	
<p>9. If there would be a preservation or archiving system for blogs where you browse and search for blogs and the relations between them what would make the user interface comfortable and intuitive? Give us a some examples.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• What examples do you know that could be called as good practices?</li></ul>	The questions aims on User interface and Look & Feel.
<p>10. What export functionalities would you expect to process the blog contents in another specific research software? Why?</p>	

## A.10 Interview Schedule – Admin – Organisation

### Part A) (approx. 5 min)

1. Give a brief description of BlogForever and clearly state to the interviewee the purpose of the interview

Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
First, we would like to understand your background. This will help us to understand the context of your answers.  1. Could you please tell us about your position in your organization?	
2. How many people maintain which amount of IT hardware and services in your organization?	Estimations are sufficient. The answer should just help to get an overview over the size and importance of the IT department in the organization.

### Part B)

Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
<p>3. Do you have an archive for the blogs of your organization?</p> <p><b>If yes:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Could you describe the process of archiving the blogs of your organization?</li> <li>b. Could you describe the process of restoring information from your archive?</li> <li>c. Did you ever need to filter the archived blogs? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Why and how did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Did you ever need to analyse the archived blogs? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Why and how did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Did you ever need to export the archived blogs? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Why and how did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Did you ever need to migrate archived blogs? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul> </li> </ol> <p><b>if not for blogs:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Could you describe the process of archiving</li> </ol>	

<p>digital content of your organization?</p> <p>b. Could you describe the process of restoring information from your archive?</p> <p>c. Did you ever need to filter the archived content?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Why and how did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul> <p>d. Did you ever need to analyse the archived content?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Why and how did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul> <p>e. Did you ever need to export the archived content?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Why and how did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul> <p>f. Did you ever need to migrate digital content?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul>	
<p>4. Could you please estimate and describe how many blogs you are archiving / would consider archiving?</p> <p>Follow up question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What technical challenges does this imply?</li> </ul>	e.g. capacity, scalability
<p>5. How would you like to manage the list of blogs you archive and how often would you expect to change that list?</p>	<p>Meaning the list of blogs that should be archived. How should that list be managed by the platform admin: web interface, database, text file. How often would blogs be added/subtracted/edited in that list.</p>
<p>6. How often would you choose to check and update the archived blogs' status and new posts and why?</p>	<p>If there are dependencies then try to figure them out. E.g. the frequency depends from subject.</p>
<p>7. Are you supporting any APIs/Technologies for digital content interoperability in your platform?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Which and why?</li> </ul>	<p>The interviewee should describe the technologies they employ to import/export/handle different types of digital content</p>
<p>8. How many users access your services normally and how many in peak times?</p>	
<p>9. Which characteristics or qualities must software have</p>	<p>e.g. a special software architecture, a special quality of security, a</p>



that you (can) integrate it in your existing IT environment?	special certificate for software quality
10. Which important functionalities do you normally use to monitor and maintain server software and services in your organisation?	
11. Have you defined any service levels for the services that you offer to your users? <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Which service levels do you have and why?</li></ul>	e.g. quality or availability assurances

## A.11 Interview Schedule – Admin – Blog Host

### *Part A) (approx. 5 min)*

1. Give a brief description of BlogForever and clearly state to the interviewee the purpose of the interview

Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
First, we would like to understand your background. This will help us to understand the context of your answers.  1. Could you please tell us about your position in your organization?	
2. How many people maintain which amount of IT hardware and services in your organization?	Estimations are sufficient. The answer should just help to get an overview over the size and importance of the IT department in the organization.

### *Part B)*

Questions	Hints for the Interviewer
3. What kind of software or platform do you use to publish blogs?  If it is a 3rd party platform:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do you regularly follow the software updates and why/why not?</li> </ul>	
4. What kind of archive or backup do you have? <b>If yes:</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Could you describe the process of archiving the blogs of your organization?</li> <li>b. Could you describe the process of restoring information from your archive?</li> <li>c. Did you ever need to filter the archived blogs? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Why and how did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Did you ever need to analyse the archived blogs? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Why and how did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Did you ever need to export the archived blogs? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Why and how did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	In all the following questions the terms archive* and backup* are interchangeable

<p>f. Did you ever need to migrate archived blogs?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How did you do it?</li> <li>• What challenges did you face?</li> </ul>	
<p>5. What are or have been your biggest challenges in backup or archiving blogs?</p>	
<p>6. Which APIs/Technologies do you support for digital content interoperability in your platform?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• And why?</li> </ul>	<p>The interviewee should describe the technologies they employ to import/export/handle different types of digital content</p>
<p>7. Which amount of blogs, blog content and users do you handle now and what do you expect for the future?</p> <p>Follow up question:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What challenges does this imply?</li> </ul>	<p>e.g. capacity, scalability</p>
<p>8. What security levels do you have to fulfill for your blog hosting services?</p>	
<p>9. What service levels do you have to fulfill for your blog hosting services?</p>	<p>e.g. quality, availability assurances</p>
<p>10. What do you think are the main advantages and disadvantages of installing a special software capable of aggregating, archiving &amp; managing all your blogs?</p>	

## A.12 Interview Results / Interview Debriefing Sheet

The results of each interview should be

- A recording of the interview (preferable as a mp3 file).
- The notes of the interviewer (preferable in a digital form).

Additionally, each interviewer has to fill in the following interview debriefing sheet. The information in the sheet will help to manage the outcomes of the interview and to improve further interviews.

<b>Identification of the Interview</b>
Date of Interview:
Start Time:
End Time:
Interviewer:
Interview ID (Name of the Interviewer + Unique 3-number ID):
Language of the Interview:
How was the interview conducted? (e.g. Skype)

<b>Recording</b>	
Was there a problem with the recording?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
If yes, describe:	
What, if any, measures will be taken to correct problem:	
Is the recording still viable?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
Was the recording saved digitally and labeled accordingly (mmddyy_interviewID_rec)?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No

<b>Note-taking</b>	
Were <u>brief notes</u> taken during interview session?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
Were <u>brief notes</u> saved digitally and labeled accordingly (mmddy_interview_prel_notes)?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
Were <u>extensive notes</u> taken immediately following the interview session?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
Were <u>extensive notes</u> saved digitally and labeled accordingly (mmddy_interviewID_notes)?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No

<b>Interview and Schedule</b>
Were any unexpected topics introduced by subject? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
If yes, which of these topics should be considered in future interviews:
Were there questions that did not work? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
If yes, describe:
How many minutes did it take to complete the interview, from start to finish:
Was there sufficient time to complete the interview? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
If no, please estimate reason why:

**Additional Comments**

Please list/describe any additional information regarding this particular interview session, if not covered in previous questions:



## A.13 Requirement template

### Req. number - Title of the requirement **(Template)**

<b>Requirement category</b>	The category of the requirement.
<b>Degree of necessity</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Essential</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Recommended</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Optional</b>
<b>Description of the requirement</b>	The description specifies the requirement.
<b>Stakeholder</b>	The stakeholders that mentioned / are concerned by the requirement.
<b>Justification / Foundation</b>	<p>This should explain, why the requirement is required. That could be based e.g. on</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Survey data</li> <li>• Phrases from the interview</li> <li>• Literature</li> <li>• etc.</li> </ul>
<b>Assessment / Measures</b>	How will we evaluate if the requirement is fulfilled. Example: A user can find the required functionality in less than 5 seconds.
<b>Author(s) of the requirement description</b>	<p>List of the authors who contributed to the requirement description. That is needed for later queries and clarification.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>